

1

## Outline

- 1 Networking Today
- 2 Basic Switch and End Device Configuration
- 3 Protocols and Models
- 4 Physical Layer
- 5 Number Systems
- 6 Data Link Layer
- 7 Ethernet Switching
- 8 Network Layer
- 9 Address Resolution
- 10 Basic Router Configuration
- 11 IPv4 Addressing
- 12 IPv6 Addressing
- 13 ICMP
- 14 Transport Layer
- 15 Application Layer
- 16 Network Security Fundamentals
- 17 Build a Small Network

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential2

2



3



16

1

## Module Objectives

**Module Title:** Networking Today

**Module Objective:** Explain the advances in modern technologies.

Topic Title	Topic Objective
<b>Networks Affect our Lives</b>	Explain how networks affect our daily lives.
<b>Network Components</b>	Explain how host and network devices are used.
<b>Network Representations and Topologies</b>	Explain network representations and how they are used in network topologies.
<b>Common Types of Networks</b>	Compare the characteristics of common types of networks.
<b>Internet Connections</b>	Explain how LANs and WANs interconnect to the internet.
<b>Reliable Networks</b>	Describe the four basic requirements of a reliable network.
<b>Network Trends</b>	Explain how trends such as BYOD, online collaboration, video, and cloud computing are changing the way we interact.
<b>Network Security</b>	Identify some basic security threats and solution for all networks.
<b>The IT Professional</b>	Explain employment opportunities in the networking field.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

17

## 1.1 Networks Affect Our Lives



© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

18

## Networking Today Networks Connect Us

Communication is almost as important to us as our reliance on air, water, food, and shelter. In today's world, through the use of networks, we are connected like never before.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

19

## Networking Today Video – The Cisco Networking Academy Learning Experience

Cisco Networking Academy: learn how we use technology to make the world a better place.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

20

## Networking Today No Boundaries

- World without boundaries
- Global communities
- Human network



Cisco Confidential 21

## 1.2 Network Components

Cisco Confidential 22

21

### Network Components Host Roles

Every computer on a network is called a host or end device.

Servers are computers that provide information to end devices:

- email servers
- web servers
- file server

Clients are computers that send requests to the servers to retrieve information:

- web page from a web server
- email from an email server



Server Type	Description
Email	Email server runs email server software. Clients use client software to access email.
Web	Web server runs web server software. Clients use browser software to access web pages.
File	File server stores corporate and user files. The client devices access these files.

Cisco Confidential 23

23

### Network Components Peer-to-Peer

It is possible to have a device be a client and a server in a Peer-to-Peer Network. This type of network design is only recommended for very small networks.



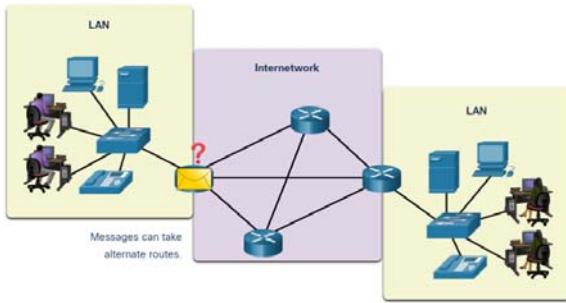
Advantages	Disadvantages
Easy to set up	No centralized administration
Less complex	Not as secure
Lower cost	Not scalable
Used for simple tasks: transferring files and sharing printers	Slower performance

Cisco Confidential 24

24

## Network Components End Devices

An end device is where a message originates from or where it is received. Data originates with an end device, flows through the network, and arrives at an end device.



## Network Components Intermediary Network Devices

An intermediary device interconnects end devices. Examples include switches, wireless access points, routers, and firewalls.

Management of data as it flows through a network is also the role of an intermediary device, including:

- Regenerate and retransmit data signals.
- Maintain information about what pathways exist in the network.
- Notify other devices of errors and communication failures.



Intermediary  
Devices

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 26

25

## Network Components Network Media

Communication across a network is carried through a medium which allows a message to travel from source to destination.

Media Types	Description
Metal wires within cables	Uses electrical impulses
Glass or plastic fibers within cables (fiber-optic cable)	Uses pulses of light.
Wireless transmission	Uses modulation of specific frequencies of electromagnetic waves.

CISCO

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 27

27

# 1.3 Network Representations and Topologies

CISCO

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 28

28

## Network Representations and Topologies

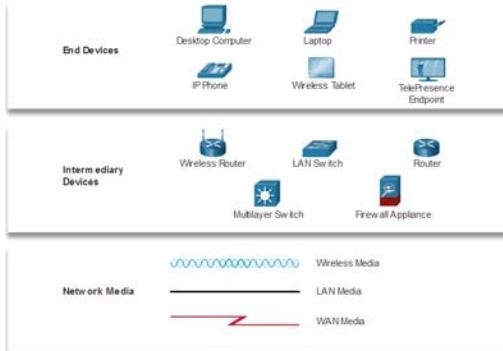
### Network Representations

Network diagrams, often called topology diagrams, use symbols to represent devices within the network.

Important terms to know include:

- Network Interface Card (NIC)
- Physical Port
- Interface

**Note:** Often, the terms port and interface are used interchangeably



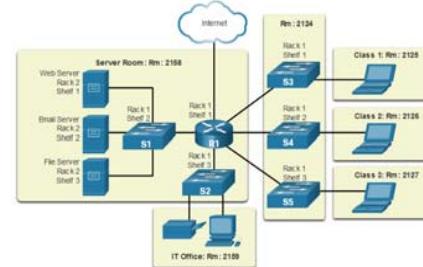
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

29

## Network Representations and Topologies

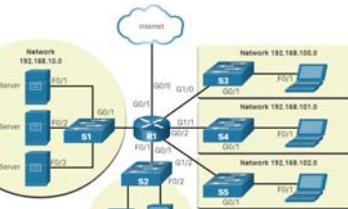
### Topology Diagrams

Physical topology diagrams illustrate the physical location of intermediary devices and cable installation.



CISCO

Logical topology diagrams illustrate devices, ports, and the addressing scheme of the network.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

30

## 1.4 Common Types of Networks

CISCO

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

31

## Common Types of Networks

### Networks of Many Sizes



Small Home

SOHO



Medium/Large

World Wide

- Small Home Networks – connect a few computers to each other and the Internet
- Small Office/Home Office – enables computer within a home or remote office to connect to a corporate network
- Medium to Large Networks – many locations with hundreds or thousands of interconnected computers
- World Wide Networks – connects hundreds of millions of computers worldwide – such as the internet

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

32

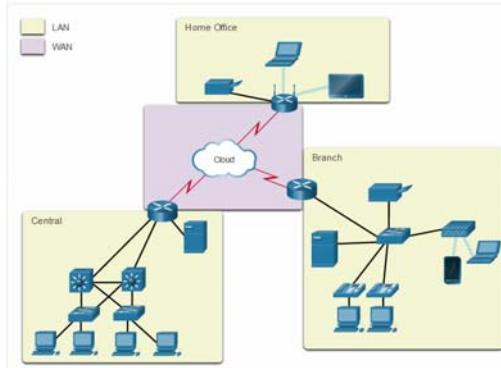
## Common Types of Networks LANs and WANs

Network infrastructures vary greatly in terms of:

- Size of the area covered
- Number of users connected
- Number and types of services available
- Area of responsibility

Two most common types of networks:

- Local Area Network (LAN)
- Wide Area Network (WAN).

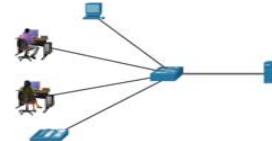


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

33

## Common Types of Networks LANs and WANs (cont.)

A LAN is a network infrastructure that spans a small geographical area.



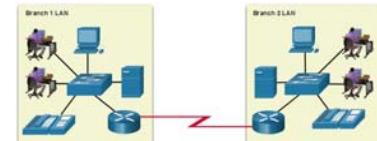
**LAN**

Interconnect end devices in a limited area.

Administered by a single organization or individual.

Provide high-speed bandwidth to internal devices.

A WAN is a network infrastructure that spans a wide geographical area.



**WAN**

Interconnect LANs over wide geographical areas.

Typically administered by one or more service providers.

Typically provide slower speed links between LANs.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

34

33

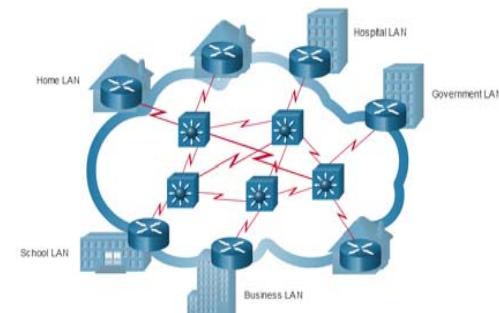
## Common Types of Networks The Internet

The internet is a worldwide collection of interconnected LANs and WANs.

- LANs are connected to each other using WANs.
- WANs may use copper wires, fiber optic cables, and wireless transmissions.

The internet is not owned by any individual or group. The following groups were developed to help maintain structure on the internet:

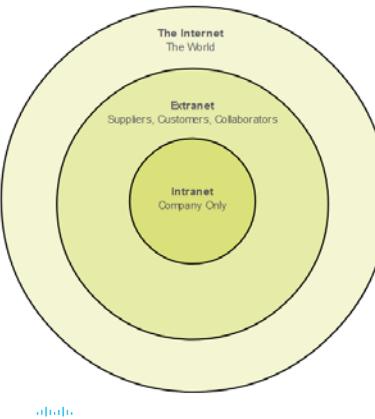
- IETF
- ICANN
- IAB



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

35

## Common Types of Networks Intranets and Extranets



36

An intranet is a private collection of LANs and WANs internal to an organization that is meant to be accessible only to the organization's members or others with authorization.

An organization might use an extranet to provide secure access to their network for individuals who work for a different organization that need access to their data on their network.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

36

35

## 1.5 Internet Connections

37

### Internet Connections Internet Access Technologies



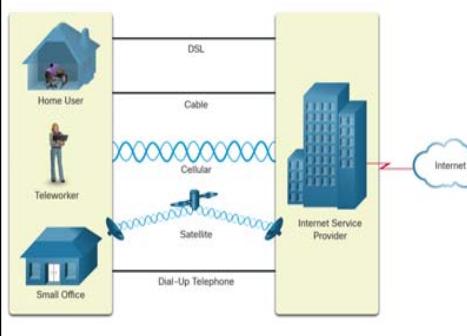
There are many ways to connect users and organizations to the internet:

- Popular services for home users and small offices include broadband cable, broadband digital subscriber line (DSL), wireless WANs, and mobile services.
- Organizations need faster connections to support IP phones, video conferencing and data center storage.
- Business-class interconnections are usually provided by service providers (SP) and may include: business DSL, leased lines, and Metro Ethernet.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 38

38

### Internet Connections Home and Small Office Internet Connections



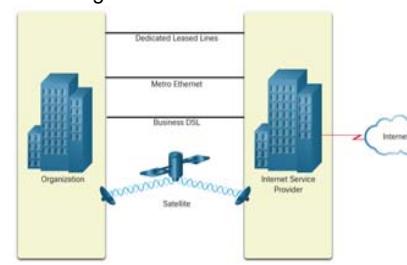
Connection	Description
Cable	high bandwidth, always on, internet offered by cable television service providers.
DSL	high bandwidth, always on, internet connection that runs over a telephone line.
Cellular	uses a cell phone network to connect to the internet.
Satellite	major benefit to rural areas without Internet Service Providers.
Dial-up telephone	an inexpensive, low bandwidth option using a modem.

39

### Internet Connections Businesses Internet Connections

Corporate business connections may require:

- higher bandwidth
- dedicated connections
- managed services



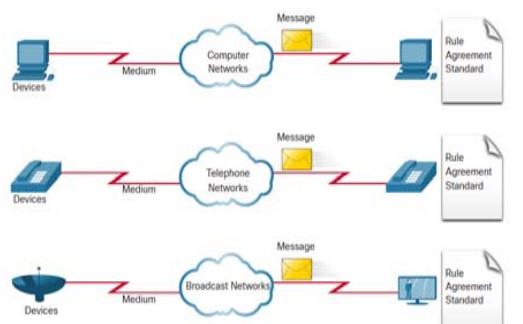
Type of Connection	Description
Dedicated Leased Line	These are reserved circuits within the service provider's network that connect distant offices with private voice and/or data networking.
Ethernet WAN	This extends LAN access technology into the WAN.
DSL	Business DSL is available in various formats including Symmetric Digital Subscriber Lines (SDSL).
Satellite	This can provide a connection when a wired solution is not available.

40

## Internet Connections The Converging Network

Before converged networks, an organization would have been separately cabled for telephone, video, and data. Each of these networks would use different technologies to carry the signal.

Each of these technologies would use a different set of rules and standards.


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 41

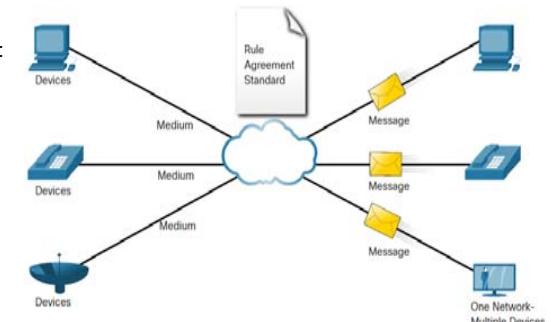
41

## Internet Connections The Converging Network (Cont.)

Converged data networks carry multiple services on one link including:

- data
- voice
- video

Converged networks can deliver data, voice, and video over the same network infrastructure. The network infrastructure uses the same set of rules and standards.


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 42

42

## Internet Connections Video – Download and Install Packet Tracer

This video will demonstrate the download and install process of Packet Tracer.


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 43

43

## Internet Connections Video – Getting Started in Cisco Packet Tracer

This video will cover the following:

- Navigate the Packet Tracer interface
- Customize the Packet Tracer Interface


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 44

44

## Internet Connections

### Packet Tracer – Network Representation

In this Packet tracer you will do the following:

- The network model in this activity incorporates many of the technologies that you will master in your CCNA studies.

**Note:** It is not important that you understand everything you see and do in this activity.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

45

## 1.6 Reliable Networks

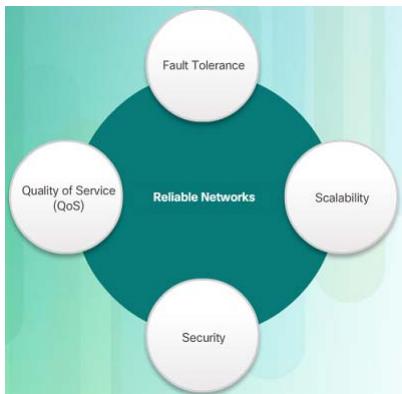


© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

46

### Reliable Network

#### Network Architecture



Network Architecture refers to the technologies that support the infrastructure that moves data across the network.

There are four basic characteristics that the underlying architectures need to address to meet user expectations:

- Fault Tolerance
- Scalability
- Quality of Service (QoS)
- Security



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

47

### Reliable Network

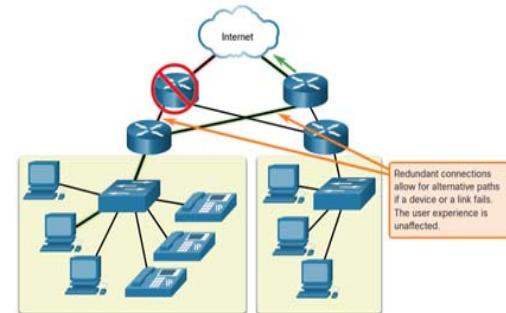
#### Fault Tolerance

A fault tolerant network limits the impact of a failure by limiting the number of affected devices. Multiple paths are required for fault tolerance.

Reliable networks provide redundancy by implementing a packet switched network:

- Packet switching splits traffic into packets that are routed over a network.
- Each packet could theoretically take a different path to the destination.

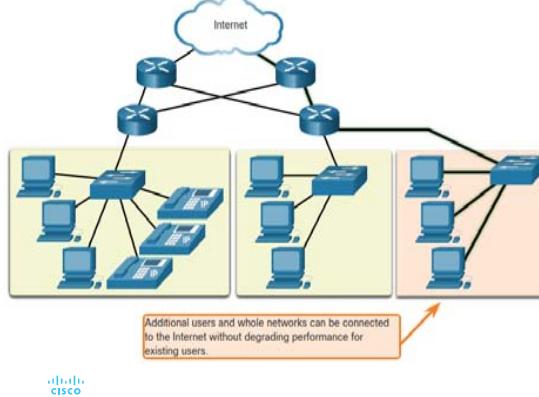
This is not possible with circuit-switched networks which establish dedicated circuits.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

48

## Reliable Network Scalability



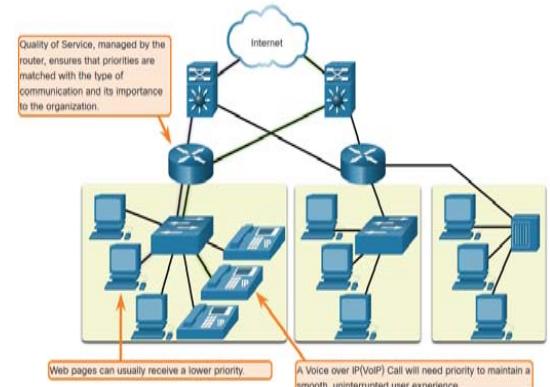
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

## Reliable Network Quality of Service

Voice and live video transmissions require higher expectations for those services being delivered.

Have you ever watched a live video with constant breaks and pauses? This is caused when there is a higher demand for bandwidth than available – and QoS isn't configured.

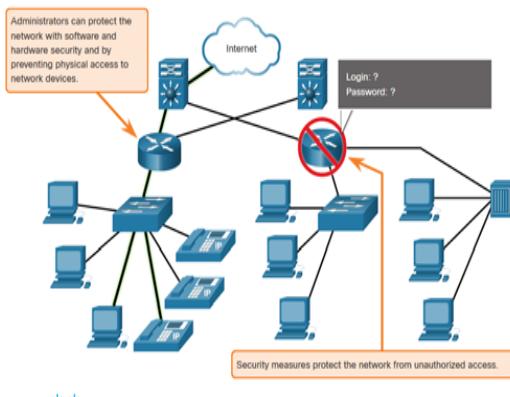
- Quality of Service (QoS) is the primary mechanism used to ensure reliable delivery of content for all users.
- With a QoS policy in place, the router can more easily manage the flow of data and voice traffic.



49

50

## Reliable Network Network Security



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

## 1.7 Network Trends

51

52

## Network Trends Recent Trends



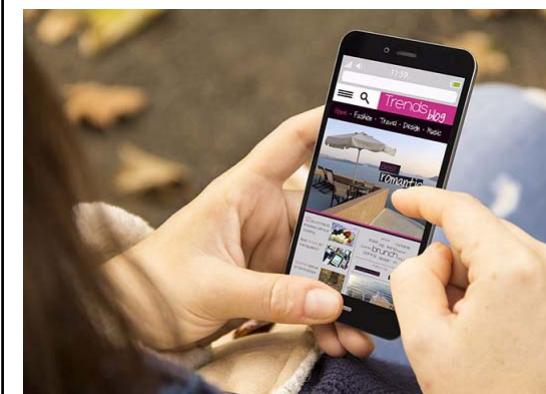
The role of the network must adjust and continually transform in order to be able to keep up with new technologies and end user devices as they constantly come to the market.

Several new networking trends that effect organizations and consumers:

- Bring Your Own Device (BYOD)
- Online collaboration
- Video communications
- Cloud computing

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 53

## Network Trends Bring Your Own Device



Bring Your Own Device (BYOD) allows users to use their own devices giving them more opportunities and greater flexibility.

BYOD allows end users to have the freedom to use personal tools to access information and communicate using their:

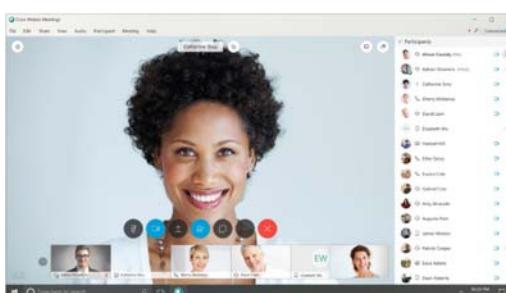
- Laptops
- Netbooks
- Tablets
- Smartphones
- E-readers

BYOD means any device, with any ownership, used anywhere.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 54

53

## Network Trends Online Collaboration



- Collaborate and work with others over the network on joint projects.
- Collaboration tools including Cisco WebEx (shown in the figure) gives users a way to instantly connect and interact.
- Collaboration is a very high priority for businesses and in education.
- Cisco Webex Teams is a multifunctional collaboration tool.
  - send instant messages
  - post images
  - post videos and links

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 55

## Network Trends Video Communication

- Video calls are made to anyone, regardless of where they are located.
- Video conferencing is a powerful tool for communicating with others.
- Video is becoming a critical requirement for effective collaboration.
- Cisco TelePresence powers is one way of working where everyone, everywhere.

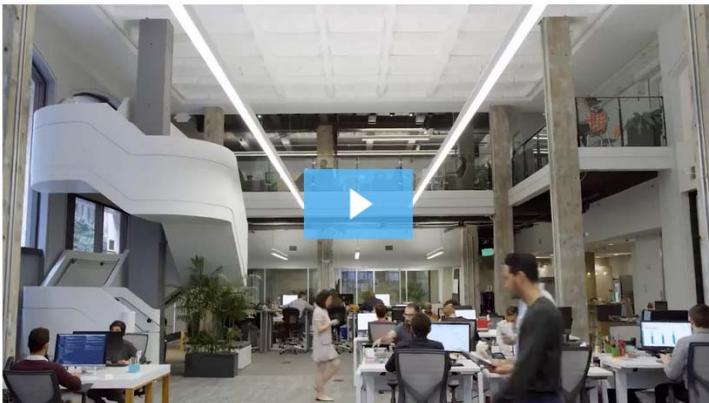
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 56

55

56

## Network Trends

## Video – Cisco WebEx for Huddles



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

57

## Network Trends

## Cloud Computing

Cloud computing allows us to store personal files or backup our data on servers over the internet.

- Applications can also be accessed using the Cloud.
- Allows businesses to deliver to any device anywhere in the world.

Cloud computing is made possible by data centers.

- Smaller companies that can't afford their own data centers, lease server and storage services from larger data center organizations in the Cloud.

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

58

57

## Network Trends

## Cloud Computing (Cont.)

Four types of Clouds:

- Public Clouds
  - Available to the general public through a pay-per-use model or for free.
- Private Clouds
  - Intended for a specific organization or entity such as the government.
- Hybrid Clouds
  - Made up of two or more Cloud types – for example, part custom and part public.
  - Each part remains a distinctive object but both are connected using the same architecture.
- Custom Clouds
  - Built to meet the needs of a specific industry, such as healthcare or media.
  - Can be private or public.

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

59

## Network Trends

## Technology Trends in the Home



- Smart home technology is a growing trend that allows technology to be integrated into every-day appliances which allows them to interconnect with other devices.
- Ovens might know what time to cook a meal for you by communicating with your calendar on what time you are scheduled to be home.
- Smart home technology is currently being developed for all rooms within a house.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

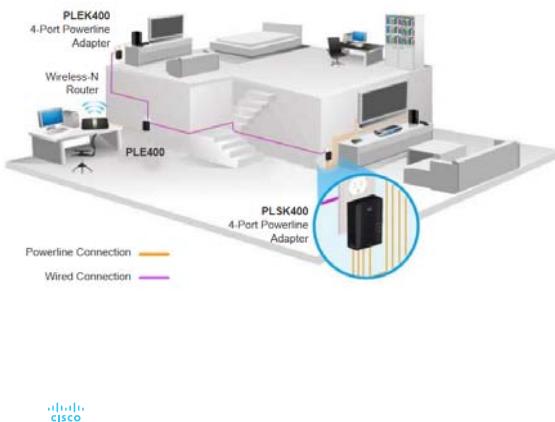
60

60

12

## Network Trends

### Powerline Networking

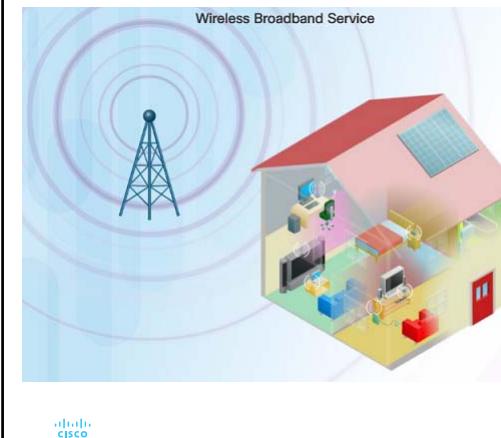


- Powerline networking can allow devices to connect to a LAN where data network cables or wireless communications are not a viable option.
- Using a standard powerline adapter, devices can connect to the LAN wherever there is an electrical outlet by sending data on certain frequencies.
- Powerline networking is especially useful when wireless access points cannot reach all the devices in the home.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 61

## Network Trends

### Wireless Broadband



In addition to DSL and cable, wireless is another option used to connect homes and small businesses to the internet.

- More commonly found in rural environments, a Wireless Internet Service Provider (WISP) is an ISP that connects subscribers to designated access points or hotspots.
- Wireless broadband is another solution for the home and small businesses.
- Uses the same cellular technology used by a smart phone.
- An antenna is installed outside the house providing wireless or wired connectivity for devices in the home.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 62

61

62

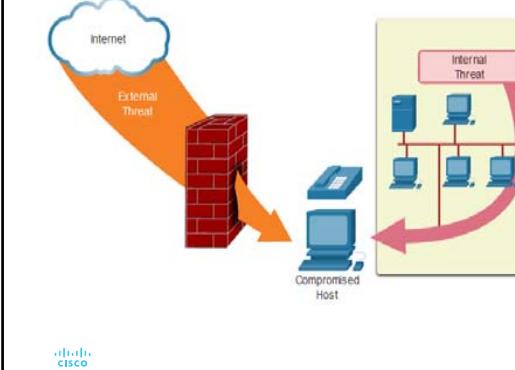
## 1.8 Network Security

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 63

## Network Security

### Security Threats



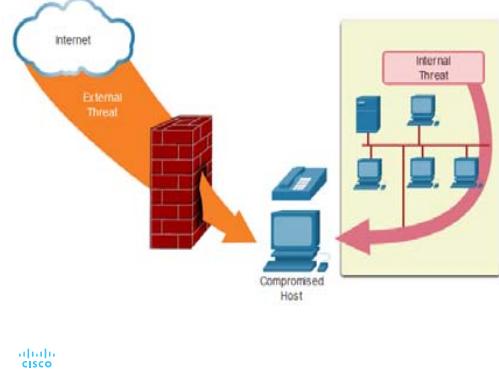
- Network security is an integral part of networking regardless of the size of the network.
- The network security that is implemented must take into account the environment while securing the data, but still allowing for quality of service that is expected of the network.
- Securing a network involves many protocols, technologies, devices, tools, and techniques in order to secure data and mitigate threats.
- Threat vectors might be external or internal.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 64

63

64

## Network Security Security Threats (Cont.)



### External Threats:

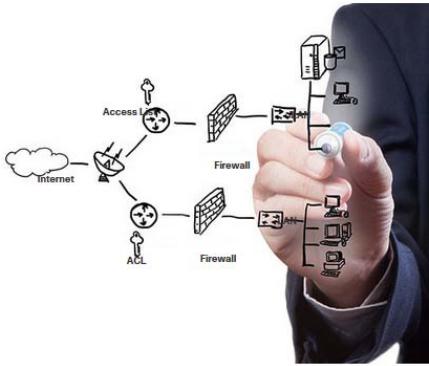
- Viruses, worms, and Trojan horses
- Spyware and adware
- Zero-day attacks
- Threat Actor attacks
- Denial of service attacks
- Data interception and theft
- Identity theft

### Internal Threats:

- lost or stolen devices
- accidental misuse by employees
- malicious employees

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 65

## Network Security Security Solutions



Security must be implemented in multiple layers using more than one security solution.

Network security components for home or small office network:

- Antivirus and antispyware software should be installed on end devices.
- Firewall filtering used to block unauthorized access to the network.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 66

65

66

## Network Security Security Solutions (Cont.)



Larger networks have additional security requirements:

- Dedicated firewall system
- Access control lists (ACL)
- Intrusion prevention systems (IPS)
- Virtual private networks (VPN)

The study of network security starts with a clear understanding of the underlying switching and routing infrastructure.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 67

## 1.9 The IT Professional

67

68

## The IT Professional CCNA



### The Cisco Certified Network Associate (CCNA) certification:

- demonstrates that you have a knowledge of foundational technologies
- ensures you stay relevant with skills needed for the adoption of next-generation technologies.

### The new CCNA focus:

- IP foundation and security topics
- Wireless, virtualization, automation, and network programmability.

New DevNet certifications at the associate, specialist and professional levels, to validate your software development skills.

Specialist certification validate your skills in line with your job role and interests.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 69

## The IT Professional Networking Jobs

### Employment Opportunities



At [www.netacad.com](http://www.netacad.com) you can click the Careers menu and then select Employment opportunities.

- Find employment opportunities by using the Talent Bridge Matching Engine.
- Search for jobs with Cisco, Cisco partners and distributors seeking Cisco Networking Academy students and alumni.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 70

69

70

## The IT Professional Lab – Researching IT and Networking Job Opportunities

In this lab, you will complete the following objectives:

- Research Job Opportunities
- Reflect on Research

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 71

## 1.10 Module Practice and Quiz

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 72

71

72

## Module Practice and Quiz

### What did I learn in this module?

- Through the use of networks, we are connected like never before.
- All computers that are connected to a network and participate directly in network communication are classified as hosts.
- Diagrams of networks often use symbols to represent the different devices and connections that make up a network.
- A diagram provides an easy way to understand how devices connect in a large network.
- The two types of network infrastructures are Local Area Networks (LANs), and Wide Area Networks (WANs).
- SOHO internet connections include cable, DSL, Cellular, Satellite, and Dial-up telephone.
- Business internet connections include Dedicated Leased Line, Metro Ethernet, Business DSL, and Satellite.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

73

## Module Practice and Quiz

### What did I learn in this module? (Cont.)

- Network architecture refers to the technologies that support the infrastructure and the programmed services and rules, or protocols, that move data across the network.
- There are four basic characteristics of network architecture: Fault Tolerance, Scalability, Quality of Service (QoS), and Security.
- Recent networking trends that affect organizations and consumers: Bring Your Own Device (BYOD), online collaboration, video communications, and cloud computing.
- There are several common external and internal threats to networks.
- Larger networks and corporate networks use antivirus, antispyware, and firewall filtering, but they also have other security requirements: Dedicated firewall systems, Access control lists (ACL), Intrusion prevention systems (IPS), and Virtual private networks (VPN)
- The Cisco Certified Network Associate (CCNA) certification demonstrates your knowledge of foundational technologies.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

74

## Module 1

### New Terms and Commands

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Peer-to-Peer File Sharing</li> <li>• Small Office/Home Office or SOHO</li> <li>• Medium to large network</li> <li>• Server</li> <li>• Client</li> <li>• Peer-to-Peer network</li> <li>• End device</li> <li>• Intermediary device</li> <li>• Medium</li> <li>• Network Interface Card (NIC)</li> <li>• Physical Port</li> <li>• Interface</li> <li>• Physical topology diagram</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Logical topology diagram</li> <li>• Local Area Network (LAN)</li> <li>• Wide Area Network (WAN)</li> <li>• Internet</li> <li>• Intranet</li> <li>• Extranet</li> <li>• Internet Service Provider (ISP)</li> <li>• Converged networks</li> <li>• Network architecture</li> <li>• Fault tolerant network</li> <li>• Packet-switched network</li> <li>• Circuit-switched network</li> <li>• Scalable network</li> <li>• Quality of Service (Qos)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Network bandwidth</li> <li>• Bring Your Own Device (BYOD)</li> <li>• Collaboration</li> <li>• Cloud computing</li> <li>• Private clouds</li> <li>• Hybrid clouds</li> <li>• Public clouds</li> <li>• Custom clouds</li> <li>• Data center</li> <li>• Smart home technology</li> <li>• Powerline networking</li> <li>• Wireless Internet Service Provider (WISP)</li> <li>• Network architecture</li> </ul>
--	---	---



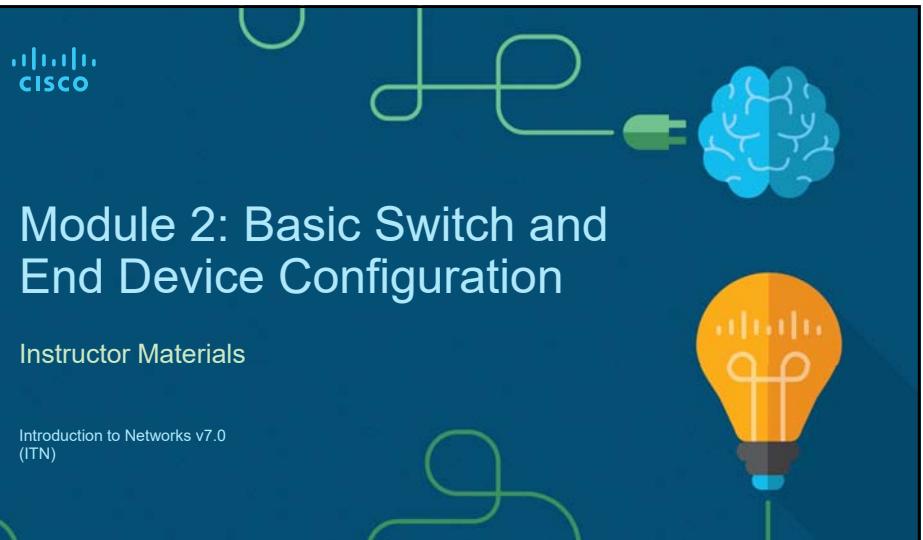
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

75

## Instructor Materials

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)

76



## What to Expect in this Module

- To facilitate learning, the following features within the GUI may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Animations	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Videos	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Check Your Understanding(CYU)	Per topic online quiz to help learners gauge content understanding.
Interactive Activities	A variety of formats to help learners gauge content understanding.
Syntax Checker	Small simulations that expose learners to Cisco command line to practice configuration skills.
PT Activity	Simulation and modeling activities designed to explore, acquire, reinforce, and expand skills.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

78

## What to Expect in this Module (Cont.)

- To facilitate learning, the following features may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Packet Tracer Physical Mode Activity	These activities are completed using Packet Tracer in Physical Mode.
Hands-On Labs	Labs designed for working with physical equipment.
Class Activities	These are found on the Instructor Resources page. Class Activities are designed to facilitate learning, class discussion, and collaboration.
Module Quizzes	Self-assessments that integrate concepts and skills learned throughout the series of topics presented in the module.
Module Summary	Briefly recaps module content.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

79

## Module 2: Basic Switch and End Device Configuration

Introductions to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)



89

## Module Objectives

**Module Title:** Basic Switch and End Device Configuration

**Module Objective:** Implement initial settings including passwords, IP addressing, and default gateway parameters on a network switch and end devices.

Topic Title	Topic Objective
Cisco IOS Access	Explain how to access a Cisco IOS device for configuration purposes.
IOS Navigation	Explain how to navigate Cisco IOS to configure network devices.
The Command Structure	Describe the command structure of Cisco IOS software.
Basic Device Configuration	Configure a Cisco IOS device using CLI.
Save Configurations	Use IOS commands to save the running configuration.
Ports and Addresses	Explain how devices communicate across network media.
Configure IP Addressing	Configure a host device with an IP address.
Verify Connectivity	Verify connectivity between two end devices.

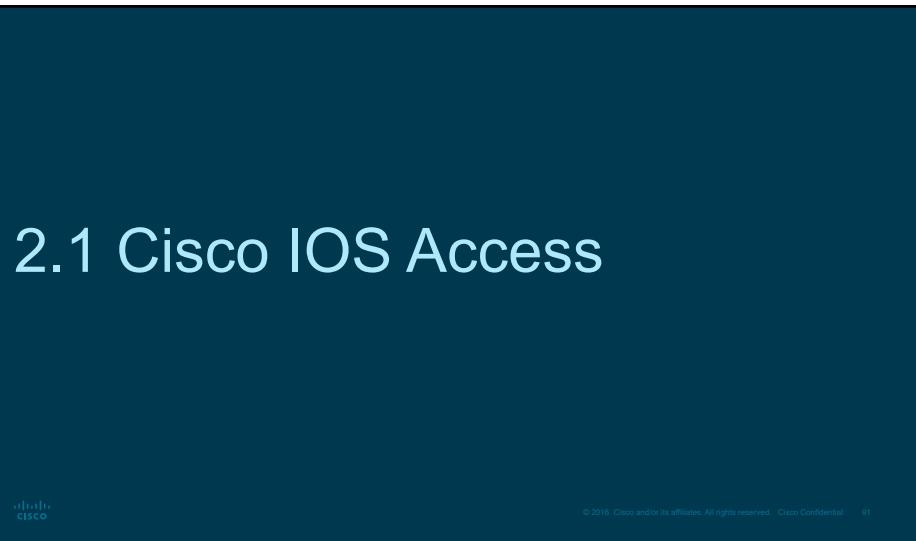


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

90

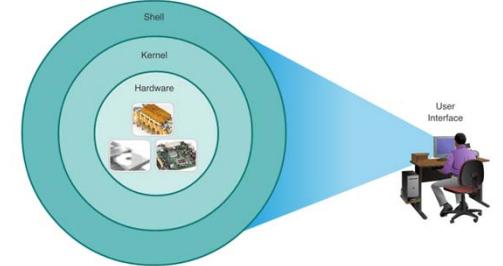
## 2.1 Cisco IOS Access

91



### Cisco IOS Access Operating Systems

- **Shell** - The user interface that allows users to request specific tasks from the computer. These requests can be made either through the CLI or GUI interfaces.
- **Kernel** - Communicates between the hardware and software of a computer and manages how hardware resources are used to meet software requirements.
- **Hardware** - The physical part of a computer including underlying electronics.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 92

92

### Cisco IOS Access GUI

- A GUI allows the user to interact with the system using an environment of graphical icons, menus, and windows.
- A GUI is more user-friendly and requires less knowledge of the underlying command structure that controls the system.
- Examples of these are: Windows, macOS, Linux KDE, Apple iOS and Android.
- GUIs can fail, crash, or simply not operate as specified. For these reasons, network devices are typically accessed through a CLI.



93

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 93

### Cisco IOS Access Purpose of an OS

PC operating system enables a user to do the following:

- Use a mouse to make selections and run programs
- Enter text and text-based commands



94

CLI-based network operating system enables a network technician to do the following:

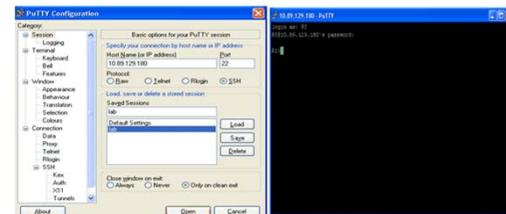
- Use a keyboard to run CLI-based network programs
- Use a keyboard to enter text and text-based commands
- View output on a monitor

```
analyst@secOps:~$ ls
desktop Downloads lab.support.files second_drive
[analyst@secOps ~]$
```

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 94

## Cisco IOS Access Access Methods

- Console** – A physical management port used to access a device in order to provide maintenance, such as performing the initial configurations.
- Secure Shell (SSH)** – Establishes a secure remote CLI connection to a device, through a virtual interface, over a network. (Note: This is the recommended method for remotely connecting to a device.)
- Telnet** – Establishes an insecure remote CLI connection to a device over the network. (Note: User authentication, passwords and commands are sent over the network in plaintext.)

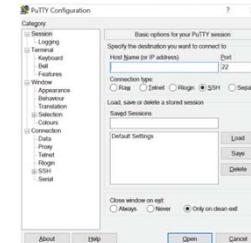


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 95

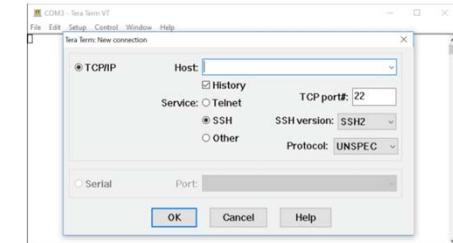
95

## Cisco IOS Access Terminal Emulation Programs

- Terminal emulation programs are used to connect to a network device by either a console port or by an SSH/Telnet connection.
- There are several terminal emulation programs to choose from such as PuTTY, Tera Term and SecureCRT.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 95



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 96

96

## 2.2 IOS Navigation

cisco

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 97

97

## IOS Navigation Primary Command Modes

### User EXEC Mode:

- Allows access to only a limited number of basic monitoring commands
- Identified by the CLI prompt that ends with the > symbol



### Privileged EXEC Mode:

- Allows access to all commands and features
- Identified by the CLI prompt that ends with the # symbol



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 98

98

**IOS Navigation****Configuration Mode and Subconfiguration Modes****Global Configuration Mode:**

- Used to access configuration options on the device

```
Switch(config)#
```

**Line Configuration Mode:**

- Used to configure console, SSH, Telnet or AUX access

```
Switch(config-line)#
```

**Interface Configuration Mode:**

- Used to configure a switch port or router interface

```
Switch(config-if)#
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 99

99

**IOS Navigation****Video – IOS CLI Primary Command Modes**

This video will cover the following:

- User EXEC mode
- Privilege EXEC mode
- Global Config mode



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 100

100

**IOS Navigation****Navigation Between IOS Modes****Privileged EXEC Mode:**

- To move from user EXEC mode to privilege EXEC mode, use the **enable** command.

```
Switch> enable
Switch#
```

**Global Configuration Mode:**

- To move in and out of global configuration mode, use the **configure terminal** command. To return to privilege EXEC mode, use the **exit** command.

```
Switch(config)#
Switch(config)#exit
Switch#
```

**Line Configuration Mode:**

- To move in and out of line configuration mode, use the **line** command followed by the management line type. To return to global configuration mode, use the **exit** command.

```
Switch(config)#line console 0
Switch(config-line)#exit
Switch(config)#

```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 101

101

**IOS Navigation****Navigation Between IOS Modes (Cont.)****Subconfiguration Modes:**

- To move out of any subconfiguration mode to get back to global configuration mode, use the **exit** command. To return to privilege EXEC mode, use the **end** command or key combination **Ctrl +Z**.

```
Switch(config)#line console 0
Switch(config-line)#end
Switch#
```

- To move directly from one subconfiguration mode to another, type in the desired subconfiguration mode command. In the example, the command prompt changes from **(config-line)#[** to **(config-if)#[**.

```
Switch(config-line)#interface FastEthernet 0/1
Switch(config-if)#

```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 102

102

## IOS Navigation

### Video – Navigation Between IOS Modes

This video will cover the following:

- enable
- disable
- configure terminal
- exit
- end
- Control + Z on keyboard
- Other commands to enter sub configuration modes



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 103

## 2.3 The Command Structure

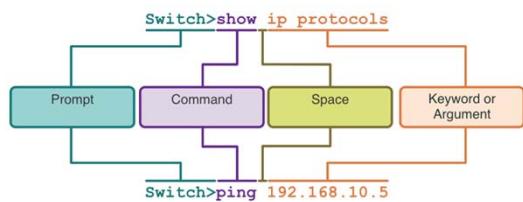


© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 104

103

## The Command Structure

### Basic IOS Command Structure



- **Keyword** – This is a specific parameter defined in the operating system (in the figure, **ip protocols**).
- **Argument** - This is not predefined; it is a value or variable defined by the user (in the figure, **192.168.10.5**).



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 105

## The Command Structure

### IOS Command Syntax Check

A command might require one or more arguments. To determine the keywords and arguments required for a command, refer to the command syntax.

- **Boldface** text indicates commands and keywords that are entered as shown.
- **Italic** text indicates an argument for which the user provides the value.

Convention	Description
<b>boldface</b>	Boldface text indicates commands and keywords that you enter literally as shown.
<i>italics</i>	Italic text indicates arguments for which you supply values.
{x}	Square brackets indicate an optional element (keyword or argument).
{x}	Braces indicate a required element (keyword or argument).
[x {y   z}]	Braces and vertical lines within square brackets indicate a required choice within an optional element. Spaces are used to clearly delineate parts of the command.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 106

105

106

## The Command Structure

### IOS Command Syntax Check (Cont.)

- The command syntax provides the pattern, or format, that must be used when entering a command.
- The command is **ping** and the user-defined argument is the *ip-address* of the destination device. For example, **ping 10.10.10.5**.
- The command is **traceroute** and the user-defined argument is the *ip-address* of the destination device. For example, **traceroute 192.168.254.254**.
- If a command is complex with multiple arguments, you may see it represented like this:

```
ping ip-address
```

```
traceroute ip-address
```

```
Switch(config-if)# switchport port-security aging { static | time time | type {absolute | inactivity})
```


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
107

## The Command Structure

### IOS Help Features

The IOS has two forms of help available: context-sensitive help and command syntax check.

- Context-sensitive help enables you to quickly find answers to these questions:
  - Which commands are available in each command mode?
  - Which commands start with specific characters or group of characters?
  - Which arguments and keywords are available to particular commands?
- Command syntax check verifies that a valid command was entered by the user.
  - If the interpreter cannot understand the command being entered, it will provide feedback describing what is wrong with the command.

```
Router#ping ?
WORD Ping destination address or hostname
  ip IP echo
  ipv6 IPv6 echo
```

```
Switch#interface fastEthernet 0/1
^
% Invalid input detected at '^' marker.
```


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
108
107
108

## The Command Structure

### Video – Context Sensitive Help and Command Syntax Checker

This video will cover the following:

- Use the help command in user EXEC, privileged EXEC, and global config mode
- Finish commands and arguments with the help command
- Use the command syntax checker to fix syntax errors and incomplete commands


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
109

## The Command Structure

### Hot Keys and Shortcuts

- The IOS CLI provides hot keys and shortcuts that make configuring, monitoring, and troubleshooting easier.
- Commands and keywords can be shortened to the minimum number of characters that identify a unique selection. For example, the **configure** command can be shortened to **conf** because **configure** is the only command that begins with **conf**.

```
Router#con
% Ambiguous command: "con"
Router#con?
configure connect
```

```
Router#conf t
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Router(config)#
```


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
110
109
110

## The Command Structure

### Hot Keys and Shortcuts (Cont.)

- The table below is a brief list of keystrokes to enhance command line editing.

Keystroke	Description
Tab	Completes a partial command name entry.
Backspace	Erases the character to the left of the cursor.
Left Arrow or Ctrl+B	Moves the cursor one character to the left.
Right Arrow or Ctrl+F	Moves the cursor one character to the right.
Up Arrow or Ctrl+P	Recalls the commands in the history buffer, beginning with the most recent commands.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

111

111

## The Command Structure

### Hot Keys and Shortcuts (Cont.)

- When a command output produces more text than can be displayed in a terminal window, the IOS will display a “More” prompt. The table below describes the keystrokes that can be used when this prompt is displayed.

Keystroke	Description	Keystroke	Description
Enter Key	Displays the next line.	Ctrl-C	When in any configuration mode, ends the configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Space Bar	Displays the next screen.	Ctrl-Z	When in any configuration mode, ends the configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Any other key	Ends the display string, returning to privileged EXEC mode.	Ctrl-Shift-6	All-purpose break sequence used to abort DNS lookups, traceroutes, pings, etc.

Note: To see more hot keys and shortcuts refer to 2.3.5.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

112

112

## The Command Structure

### Video – Hot Keys and Shortcuts

This video will cover the following:

- Tab key (tab completion)
- Command shortening
- Up and down arrow key
- CTRL + C
- CTRL + Z
- CTRL + Shift + 6
- CTRL + R



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

113

113

## The Command Structure

### Packet Tracer – Navigate the IOS

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Establish Basic Connections, Access the CLI, and Explore Help
- Explore EXEC Modes
- Set the Clock



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

114

114

### The Command Structure

## Packet Tracer - Navigate the IOS by Using Tera Term for Console Connectivity – Physical Mode

## Lab - Navigate the IOS by Using Tera Term for Console Connectivity

In both the Packet Tracer Physical Mode activity and in the Lab, you will complete the following objectives:

- Access a Cisco Switch through the Serial Console Port
- Display and Configure Basic Device Settings
- Access a Cisco Router Using a Mini-USB Console Cable (Note: This objective is optional in the Lab.)



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 115

## 2.4 Basic Device Configuration



© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 116

115

### Basic Device Configuration

#### Device Names

- The first configuration command on any device should be to give it a unique hostname.
- By default, all devices are assigned a factory default name. For example, a Cisco IOS switch is "Switch."
- Guideline for naming devices:
  - Start with a letter
  - Contain no spaces
  - End with a letter or digit
  - Use only letters, digits, and dashes
  - Be less than 64 characters in length

```
Switch# configure terminal
Switch(config)# hostname Sw-Floor-1
Sw-Floor-1(config) #
```

**Note:** To return the switch to the default prompt, use the **no hostname** global config command.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 117

116

### Basic Device Configuration

#### Password Guidelines

- The use of weak or easily guessed passwords are a security concern.
- All networking devices should limit administrative access by securing privileged EXEC, user EXEC, and remote Telnet access with passwords. In addition, all passwords should be encrypted and legal notifications provided.
- Password Guidelines:
  - Use passwords that are more than eight characters in length.
  - Use a combination of upper and lowercase letters, numbers, special characters, and/or numeric sequences.
  - Avoid using the same password for all devices.
  - Do not use common words because they are easily guessed.



**Note:** Most of the labs in this course use simple passwords such as **cisco** or **class**. These passwords are considered weak and easily guessable and should be avoided in production environments.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 118

117

118

## Basic Device Configuration

### Configure Passwords

#### Securing user EXEC mode access:

- First enter line console configuration mode using the **line console 0** command in global configuration mode.
- Next, specify the user EXEC mode password using the **password password** command.
- Finally, enable user EXEC access using the **login** command.

```
Sw-Floor-1# configure terminal
Sw-Floor-1(config)# line console 0
Sw-Floor-1(config-line)# password cisco
Sw-Floor-1(config-line)# login
Sw-Floor-1(config-line)# end
Sw-Floor-1#
```

#### Securing privileged EXEC mode access:

- First enter global configuration mode.
- Next, use the **enable secret password** command.

```
Sw-Floor-1# configure terminal
Sw-Floor-1(config)# enable secret class
Sw-Floor-1(config)# exit
Sw-Floor-1#
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

119

## Basic Device Configuration

### Configure Passwords (Cont.)

#### Securing VTY line access:

- First enter line VTY configuration mode using the **line vty 0 15** command in global configuration mode.
- Next, specify the VTY password using the **password password** command.
- Finally, enable VTY access using the **login** command.

- Note: VTY lines enable remote access using Telnet or SSH to the device. Many Cisco switches support up to 16 VTY lines that are numbered 0 to 15.

```
Sw-Floor-1# configure terminal
Sw-Floor-1(config)# line vty 0 15
Sw-Floor-1(config-line)# password cisco
Sw-Floor-1(config-line)# login
Sw-Floor-1(config-line)# end
Sw-Floor-1#
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

120

119

## Basic Device Configuration

### Encrypt Passwords

- The startup-config and running-config files display most passwords in plaintext.
- To encrypt all plaintext passwords, use the **service password-encryption** global config command.

- Use the **show running-config** command to verify that the passwords on the device are now encrypted.

```
Sw-Floor-1# configure terminal
Sw-Floor-1(config)# service password-encryption
Sw-Floor-1(config)# exit
Sw-Floor-1#
```

```
Sw-Floor-1# show running-config
!
!
line con 0
password 7 094F471A1A0A
login
!
Line vty 0 4
Password 7 03095A0F034F38435B49150A1819
Login
!
end
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

121

## Basic Device Configuration

### Banner Messages

- A banner message is important to warn unauthorized personnel from attempting to access the device.
- To create a banner message of the day on a network device, use the **banner motd # the message of the day #** global config command.

```
Sw-Floor-1# configure terminal
Sw-Floor-1(config)# banner motd #Authorized Access Only!#
```

The banner will be displayed on attempts to access the device.

Press RETURN to get started.  
  
 Authorized Access Only!  
 User Access Verification  
 Password:

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

122

122

## Basic Device Configuration

### Video – Secure Administrative Access to a Switch

This video will cover the following:

- Access the command line to secure the switch
- Secure access to the console port
- Secure virtual terminal access for remote access
- Encrypt passwords on the switch
- Configure the banner message
- Verify security changes



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 123

123

## 2.5 Save Configurations



© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 124

124

## Save Configurations

### Configuration Files

▪ There are two system files that store the device configuration:

- **startup-config** - This is the saved configuration file that is stored in NVRAM. It contains all the commands that will be used by the device upon startup or reboot. Flash does not lose its contents when the device is powered off.
- **running-config** - This is stored in Random Access Memory (RAM). It reflects the current configuration. Modifying a running configuration affects the operation of a Cisco device immediately. RAM is volatile memory. It loses all of its content when the device is powered off or restarted.
- To save changes made to the running configuration to the startup configuration file, use the **copy running-config startup-config** privileged EXEC mode command.

```
Router#show startup-config
Using 624 bytes
!
version 15.4
no service timestamps log datetime msec
no service timestamps debug datetime msec
no service password-encryption
```

```
Router#show running-config
Building configuration...
!
Current configuration : 624 bytes
!
version 15.4
no service timestamps log datetime msec
no service timestamps debug datetime msec
no service password-encryption
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 125

## Save Configurations

### Alter the Running Configurations

If changes made to the running config do not have the desired effect and the running-config has not yet been saved, you can restore the device to its previous configuration. To do this you can:

- Remove the changed commands individually.
- Reload the device using the **reload** command in privilege EXEC mode. *Note: This will cause the device to briefly go offline, leading to network downtime.*

```
Router# reload
Proceed with reload? [confirm]
Initializing Hardware ...
```

If the undesired changes were saved to the startup-config, it may be necessary to clear all the configurations using the **erase startup-config** command in privilege EXEC mode.

- After erasing the startup-config, reload the device to clear the running-config file from RAM.

```
Router# erase startup-config
Erasing the nvram filesystem will remove all configuration files! Continue? [confirm]
(OK)
Erase of nvram: complete
$STD-7-NV_BLOCK_INIT: Initialized the geometry of nvram
Router#
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 126

125

126

## Save Configurations

### Video – Alter the Running Configuration

This video will cover the following:

- Copy the running-config file to the startup-config file
- Show the files in the flash or NVRAM directory
- Use command shortening
- Erase the startup-config file
- Copy the start-config file to the running-config file



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 127

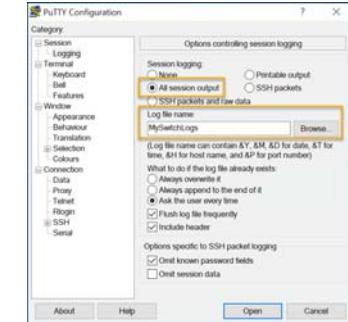
127

## Save Configurations

### Capture Configuration to a Text File

Configuration files can also be saved and archived to a text document.

- **Step 1.** Open terminal emulation software, such as PuTTY or Tera Term, that is already connected to a switch.
- **Step 2.** Enable logging in to the terminal software and assign a name and file location to save the log file. The figure displays that **All session output** will be captured to the file specified (i.e., MySwitchLogs).



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 128

128

## Save Configurations

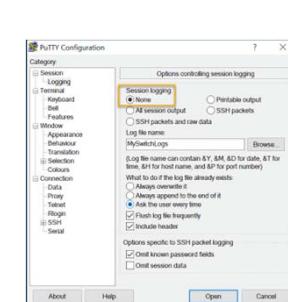
### Capture Configuration to a Text File (Cont.)

- **Step 3.** Execute the **show running-config** or **show startup-config** command at the privileged EXEC prompt. Text displayed in the terminal window will be placed into the chosen file.
- **Step 4.** Disable logging in the terminal software. The figure shows how to disable logging by choosing the **None** session logging option

Note: The text file created can be used as a record of how the device is currently implemented. The file could require editing before being used to restore a saved configuration to a device.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 129



129

## Save Configurations

### Packet Tracer – Configure Initial Switch Settings

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Verify the Default Switch Configuration
- Configure a Basic Switch Configuration
- Configure a MOTD Banner
- Save Configuration Files to NVRAM
- Configure a second Switch

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 130

130

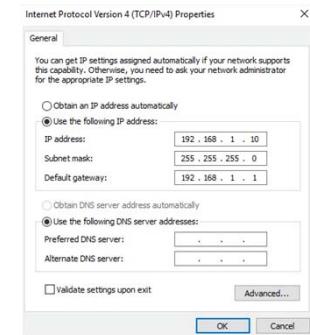
## 2.6 Ports and Addresses

131

### Ports and Addresses

#### IP Addresses

- The use of IP addresses is the primary means of enabling devices to locate one another and establish end-to-end communication on the internet.
- The structure of an IPv4 address is called dotted decimal notation and is represented by four decimal numbers between 0 and 255.
- An IPv4 subnet mask is a 32-bit value that differentiates the network portion of the address from the host portion. Coupled with the IPv4 address, the subnet mask determines to which subnet the device is a member.
- The default gateway address is the IP address of the router that the host will use to access remote networks, including the internet.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 132

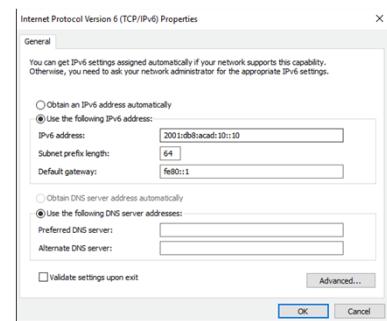
132

### Ports and Addresses

#### IP Addresses (Cont.)

- IPv6 addresses are 128 bits in length and written as a string of hexadecimal values. Every four bits is represented by a single hexadecimal digit; for a total of 32 hexadecimal values. Groups of four hexadecimal digits are separated by a colon ":".
- IPv6 addresses are not case-sensitive and can be written in either lowercase or uppercase.

**Note:** IP in this course refers to both the IPv4 and IPv6 protocols. IPv6 is the most recent version of IP and is replacing the more common IPv4.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 133

### Ports and Addresses

#### Interfaces and Ports

- Network communications depend on end user device interfaces, networking device interfaces, and the cables that connect them.
- Types of network media include twisted-pair copper cables, fiber-optic cables, coaxial cables, or wireless.
- Different types of network media have different features and benefits. Some of the differences between various types of media include:
  - Distance the media can successfully carry a signal
  - Environment in which the media is to be installed
  - Amount of data and the speed at which it must be transmitted
  - Cost of the media and installation



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 134

134

133

## 2.7 Configure IP Addressing

135

### Configure IP Addressing Manual IP Address Configuration for End Devices

- End devices on the network need an IP address in order to communicate with other devices on the network.
- IPv4 address information can be entered into end devices manually, or automatically using Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP).
- To manually configure an IPv4 address on a Windows PC, open the **Control Panel > Network Sharing Center > Change adapter settings** and choose the adapter. Next right-click and select **Properties** to display the **Local Area Connection Properties**.
- Next, click **Properties** to open the **Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Properties** window. Then configure the IPv4 address and subnet mask information, and default gateway.

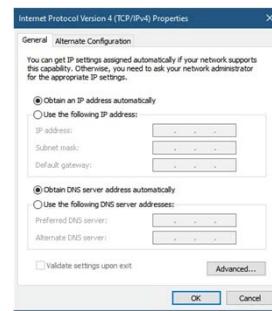


**Note:** IPv6 addressing and configuration options are similar to IPv4.

136

### Configure IP Addressing Automatic IP Address Configuration for End Devices

- DHCP enables automatic IPv4 address configuration for every end device that is DHCP-enabled.
- End devices are typically by default using DHCP for automatic IPv4 address configuration.
- To configure DHCP on a Windows PC, open the **Control Panel > Network Sharing Center > Change adapter settings** and choose the adapter. Next right-click and select **Properties** to display the **Local Area Connection Properties**.
- Next, click **Properties** to open the **Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4)** Properties window, then select **Obtain an IP address automatically** and **Obtain DNS server address automatically**.



**Note:** IPv6 uses DHCPv6 and SLAAC (Stateless Address Autoconfiguration) for dynamic address allocation.

137

### Configure IP Addressing Switch Virtual Interface Configuration

To access the switch remotely, an IP address and a subnet mask must be configured on the SVI.

To configure an SVI on a switch:

- Enter the **interface vlan 1** command in global configuration mode.
- Next assign an IPv4 address using the **ip address ip-address subnet-mask** command.
- Finally, enable the virtual interface using the **no shutdown** command.

```
Switch# configure terminal
Switch(config)# interface vlan 1
Switch(config-if)# ip address 192.168.1.20 255.255.255.0
Switch(config-if)# no shutdown
```

138

## Configure IP Addressing

### Packet Tracer – Implement Basic Connectivity

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Perform a Basic Configuration on two switches
- Configure the PCs
- Configure the Switch Management Interface



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 139

## 2.8 Verify Connectivity



© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 140

139

140

## Verify Connectivity

### Video – Test the Interface Assignment

This video will cover the following:

- Connect a console cable from the PC to the switch
- Use the terminal emulation program and accept the defaults to bring you to the command line
- Use enable to enter privileged EXEC mode
- Use the global configuration mode and the interface configuration mode to enter the no shutdown command



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 141

## Verify Connectivity

### Video – Test End-to-End Connectivity

This video will cover the use of the ping command to test connectivity on both switches and both PCs.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 142

141

142

## 2.9 Module Practice and Quiz

Cisco

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 143

143

### Module Practice and Quiz

#### Packet Tracer – Basic Switch and End Device Configuration

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Configure hostnames and IP addresses on two switches
- Use Cisco IOS commands to specify or limit access to the device configurations
- Use IOS commands to save the running configuration
- Configure two host devices with IP addresses
- Verify connectivity between the two PC end devices

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 144

144

### Module Practice and Quiz

#### Packet Tracer - Basic Switch and End Device Configuration – Physical Mode

#### Lab – Basic Switch and End Device Configuration

In both the Packet Tracer Physical Mode activity and in the Lab, you will complete the following objectives:

- Set Up the Network Topology
- Configure PC Hosts
- Configure and Verify Basic Switch Settings

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 145

145

### Module Practice and Quiz

#### What did I learn in this module?

- All end devices and network devices require an operating system (OS).
- Cisco IOS software separates management access into the following two command modes: User EXEC Mode and Privileged EXEC Mode.
- Global configuration mode is accessed before other specific configuration modes. From global config mode, the user can enter different subconfiguration modes.
- Each IOS command has a specific format or syntax and can only be executed in the appropriate mode.
- Basic device configurations- hostname, password, encrypt passwords and banner.
- There are two system files that store the device configuration: startup-config and running-config.
- IP addresses enable devices to locate one another and establish end-to-end communication on the internet. Each end device on a network must be configured with an IP address.



Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 146

146

## Module 2 : Basic Switch and End Device Configuration

### New Terms and Commands

- |                               |                                |                                  |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| • operating system (OS)       | • line configuration mode      | • console                        |
| • CLI                         | • interface configuration mode | • enable secret                  |
| • GUI                         | • Enable                       | • VTY line                       |
| • shell                       | • configure terminal           | • show running-config            |
| • kernel                      | • exit                         | • banner motd                    |
| • hardware                    | • end                          | • startup-config                 |
| • console                     | • argument                     | • running-config                 |
| • Secure Shell (SSH)          | • keyword                      | • reload                         |
| • Telnet                      | • command syntax               | • erase startup-config           |
| • terminal emulation programs | • ping                         | • DHCP                           |
| • user EXEC mode              | • traceroute                   | • switch virtual interface (SVI) |
| • privileged EXEC mode        | • help command "?"             | • ipconfig                       |
|                               | • hot keys                     | • show ip int brief              |
|                               | • hostname                     |                                  |

 Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 147

147



## Module 3: Protocols and Models

### Instructor Materials

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)



148



## Module 3: Protocols and Models

Introduction to Networks 7.0  
(ITN)



### Module Objectives

#### Module Title: Protocols and Models

**Module Objective:** Explain how network protocols enable devices to access local and remote network resources.

Topic Title	Topic Objective
The Rules	Describe the types of rules that are necessary to successfully communicate.
Protocols	Explain why protocols are necessary in network communication.
Protocol Suites	Explain the purpose of adhering to a protocol suite.
Standards Organizations	Explain the role of standards organizations in establishing protocols for network interoperability.
Reference Models	Explain how the TCP/IP model and the OSI model are used to facilitate standardization in the communication process.
Data Encapsulation	Explain how data encapsulation allows data to be transported across the network.
Data Access	Explain how local hosts access local resources on a network.

 Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 160

159

160

## Class Activity – Design a Communications System

Design a Communications System

**Objectives:**

- Explain the role of protocols and standards organizations in facilitating interoperability in network communications.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 161

## 3.1 The Rules



© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 162

161

162

## The Rules

### Video – Devices in a Bubble

This video will explain the protocols that devices use to see their place in the network and communicate with other devices.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 163

## The Rules

### Communications Fundamentals

Networks can vary in size and complexity. It is not enough to have a connection, devices must agree on “how” to communicate.

There are three elements to any communication:

- There will be a source (sender).
- There will be a destination (receiver).
- There will be a channel (media) that provides for the path of communications to occur.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 164

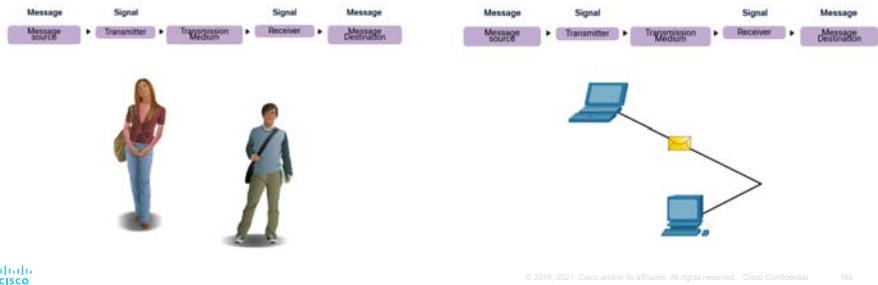
163

164

## The Rules

### Communications Protocols

- All communications are governed by protocols.
- Protocols are the rules that communications will follow.
- These rules will vary depending on the protocol.



165

## The Rules

### Rule Establishment

- Individuals must use established rules or agreements to govern the conversation.
- The first message is difficult to read because it is not formatted properly. The second shows the message properly formatted

humans communication between govern rules. It is very difficult to understand messages that are not correctly formatted and do not follow the established rules and protocols. A estrutura da gramática, da língua, da pontuação e da sentença faz a configuração humana compreensível por muitos indivíduos diferentes.

Rules govern communication between humans. It is very difficult to understand messages that are not correctly formatted and do not follow the established rules and protocols. The structure of the grammar, the language, the punctuation and the sentence make the configuration humanly understandable for many different individuals.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 166

166

## The Rules

### Rule Establishment (Cont.)

Protocols must account for the following requirements:

- An identified sender and receiver
- Common language and grammar
- Speed and timing of delivery
- Confirmation or acknowledgment requirements

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 167

167

## The Rules

### Network Protocol Requirements

Common computer protocols must be in agreement and include the following requirements:

- Message encoding
- Message formatting and encapsulation
- Message size
- Message timing
- Message delivery options

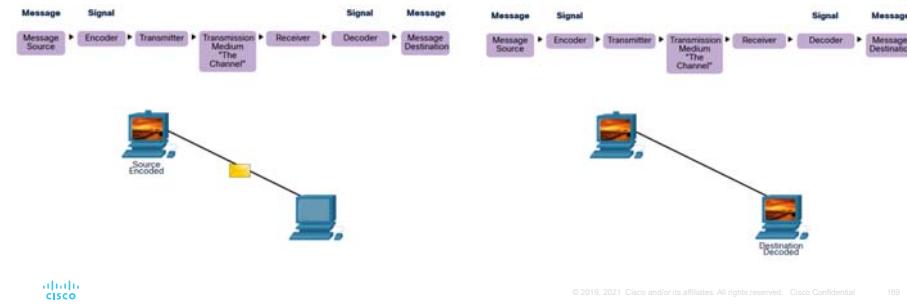
Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 168

168

**The Rules****Message Encoding**

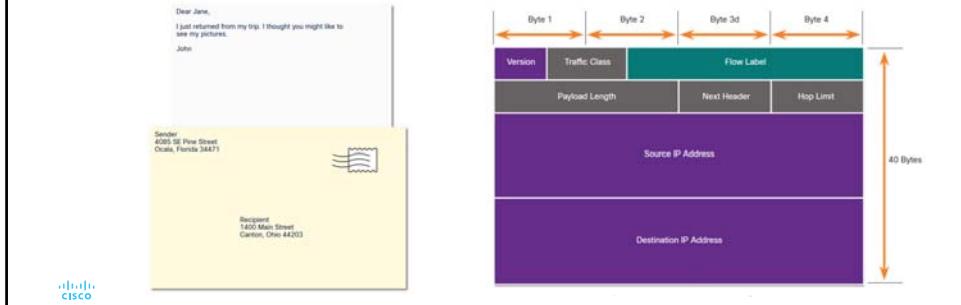
- Encoding is the process of converting information into another acceptable form for transmission.
- Decoding reverses this process to interpret the information.



169

**The Rules****Message Formatting and Encapsulation**

- When a message is sent, it must use a specific format or structure.
- Message formats depend on the type of message and the channel that is used to deliver the message.



170

**The Rules****Message Size**

Encoding between hosts must be in an appropriate format for the medium.

- Messages sent across the network are converted to bits
- The bits are encoded into a pattern of light, sound, or electrical impulses.
- The destination host must decode the signals to interpret the message.



171

**The Rules****Message Timing**

Message timing includes the following:

**Flow Control** – Manages the rate of data transmission and defines how much information can be sent and the speed at which it can be delivered.

**Response Timeout** – Manages how long a device waits when it does not hear a reply from the destination.

**Access method** - Determines when someone can send a message.

- There may be various rules governing issues like “collisions”. This is when more than one device sends traffic at the same time and the messages become corrupt.
- Some protocols are proactive and attempt to prevent collisions; other protocols are reactive and establish a recovery method after the collision occurs.



172

**The Rules****Message Delivery Options**

Message delivery may one of the following methods:

- **Unicast** – one to one communication
- **Multicast** – one to many, typically not all
- **Broadcast** – one to all

**Note:** Broadcasts are used in IPv4 networks, but are not an option for IPv6. Later we will also see "Anycast" as an additional delivery option for IPv6.

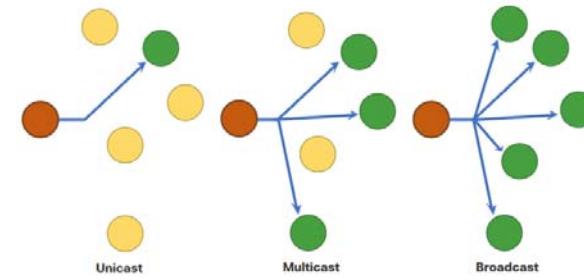


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 173

173

**The Rules****A Note About the Node Icon**

- Documents may use the node icon, typically a circle, to represent all devices.
- The figure illustrates the use of the node icon for delivery options.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 174

174

## 3.2 Protocols

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 175

175

**Protocols****Network Protocol Overview**

Network protocols define a common set of rules.

- Can be implemented on devices in:
  - Software
  - Hardware
  - Both
- Protocols have their own:
  - Function
  - Format
  - Rules

Protocol Type	Description
Network Communications	enable two or more devices to communicate over one or more networks
Network Security	secure data to provide authentication, data integrity, and data encryption
Routing	enable routers to exchange route information, compare path information, and select best path
Service Discovery	used for the automatic detection of devices or services

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 176

176

**Protocols**

## Network Protocol Functions

- Devices use agreed-upon protocols to communicate .
- Protocols may have one or functions.

Function	Description
Addressing	Identifies sender and receiver
Reliability	Provides guaranteed delivery
Flow Control	Ensures data flows at an efficient rate
Sequencing	Uniquely labels each transmitted segment of data
Error Detection	Determines if data became corrupted during transmission
Application Interface	Process-to-process communications between network applications

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 177

177

**Protocols**

## Protocol Interaction

- Networks require the use of several protocols.
- Each protocol has its own function and format.

Protocol	Function
Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Governs the way a web server and a web client interact</li> <li>Defines content and format</li> </ul>
Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Manages the individual conversations</li> <li>Provides guaranteed delivery</li> <li>Manages flow control</li> </ul>
Internet Protocol (IP)	Delivers messages globally from the sender to the receiver
Ethernet	Delivers messages from one NIC to another NIC on the same Ethernet Local Area Network (LAN)

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 178

178

## 3.3 Protocol Suites

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 179

## Protocol Suites

### Network Protocol Suites

Protocols must be able to work with other protocols.

Protocol suite:

- A group of inter-related protocols necessary to perform a communication function
- Sets of rules that work together to help solve a problem

The protocols are viewed in terms of layers:

- Higher Layers
- Lower Layers- concerned with moving data and provide services to upper layers

Protocol suites are sets of rules that work together to help solve a problem.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 180

179

180

## Protocol Suites

### Evolution of Protocol Suites

There are several protocol suites.

- Internet Protocol Suite or TCP/IP**- The most common protocol suite and maintained by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)
- Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) protocols**- Developed by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) and the International Telecommunications Union (ITU)
- AppleTalk**- Proprietary suite released by Apple Inc.
- Novell NetWare**- Proprietary suite developed by Novell Inc.

TCP/IP Layer Name	TCP/IP	ISO	AppleTalk	Novell Netware
Application	HTTP DNS DHCP FTP	ADSE ROSE TRSE SESE	AFP	NDS
Transport	TCP UDP	TP0 TP1 TP2 TP3 TP4	ATP AEP NBP RTMP	SPX
Internet	IPv4 IPv6 ICMPv4 ICMPv6	CONP/CMNS CLNP/CLNS	AARP	IPX
Network Access	Ethernet ARP WLAN			

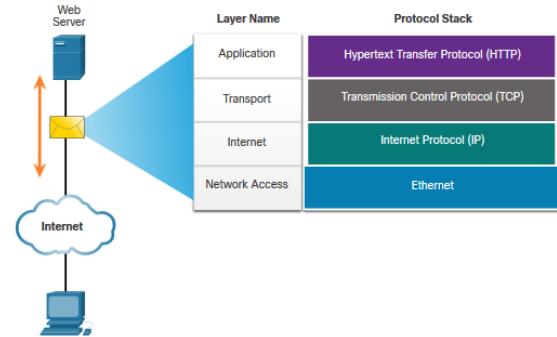
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 181

cisco

## Protocol Suites

### TCP/IP Protocol Example

- TCP/IP protocols operate at the application, transport, and internet layers.
- The most common network access layer LAN protocols are Ethernet and WLAN (wireless LAN).



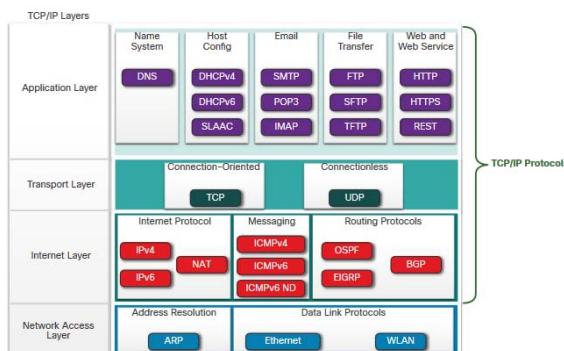
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 182

182

## Protocol Suites

### TCP/IP Protocol Suite

- TCP/IP is the protocol suite used by the internet and includes many protocols.
- TCP/IP is:
  - An open standard protocol suite that is freely available to the public and can be used by any vendor
  - A standards-based protocol suite that is endorsed by the networking industry and approved by a standards organization to ensure interoperability

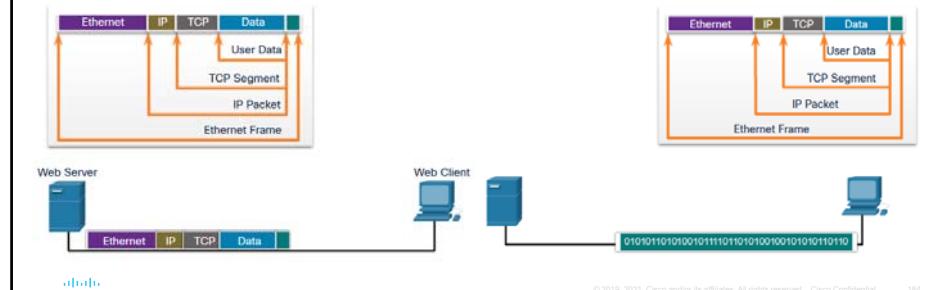


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 183

## Protocol Suites

### TCP/IP Communication Process

- A web server encapsulating and sending a web page to a client.
- A client de-encapsulating the web page for the web browser



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 184

184

183

## 3.4 Standards Organizations

185

### Standards Organizations Open Standards



Open standards encourage:

- interoperability
- competition
- innovation

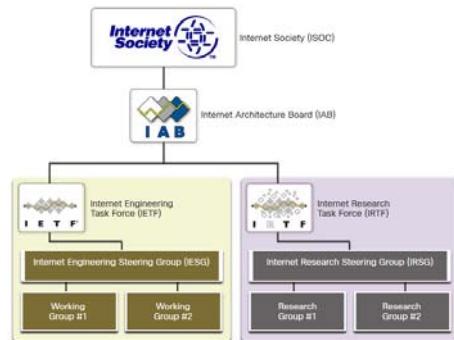
Standards organizations are:

- vendor-neutral
- non-profit organizations
- established to develop and promote the concept of open standards.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 185

186

### Standards Organizations Internet Standards

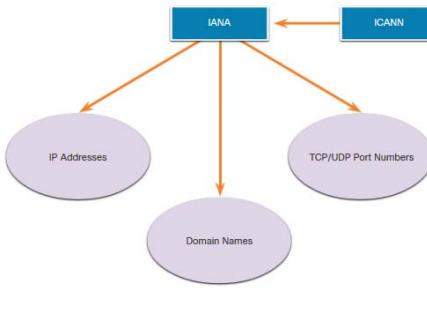


- **Internet Society (ISOC)** - Promotes the open development and evolution of internet
- **Internet Architecture Board (IAB)** - Responsible for management and development of internet standards
- **Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)** - Develops, updates, and maintains internet and TCP/IP technologies
- **Internet Research Task Force (IRTF)** - Focused on long-term research related to internet and TCP/IP protocols

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 186

187

### Standards Organizations Internet Standards (Cont.)



Standards organizations involved with the development and support of TCP/IP

- **Internet Corporation for Assigned Names and Numbers (ICANN)** - Coordinates IP address allocation, the management of domain names, and assignment of other information
- **Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA)** - Oversees and manages IP address allocation, domain name management, and protocol identifiers for ICANN

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 187

188

## Standards Organizations

### Electronic and Communications Standards

- **Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE)**, pronounced “I-triple-E”  
- dedicated to creating standards in power and energy, healthcare, telecommunications, and networking
- **Electronic Industries Alliance (EIA)** - develops standards relating to electrical wiring, connectors, and the 19-inch racks used to mount networking equipment
- **Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA)** - develops communication standards in radio equipment, cellular towers, Voice over IP (VoIP) devices, satellite communications, and more
- **International Telecommunications Union-Telecommunication Standardization Sector (ITU-T)** - defines standards for video compression, Internet Protocol Television (IPTV), and broadband communications, such as a digital subscriber line (DSL)



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 189

189

## Standards Organizations

### Lab – Researching Networking Standards

In this lab, you will do the following:

- Part 1: Research Networking Standards Organizations
- Part 2: Reflect on Internet and Computer Networking Experience



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 190

190

## 3.5 Reference Models

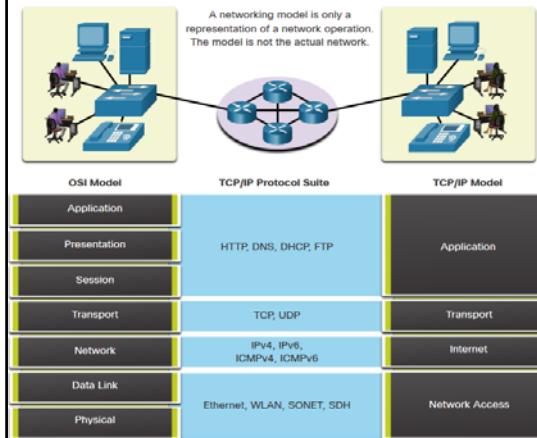


© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 191

191

## Reference Models

### The Benefits of Using a Layered Model



Complex concepts such as how a network operates can be difficult to explain and understand. For this reason, a layered model is used.

Two layered models describe network operations:

- Open System Interconnection (OSI) Reference Model
- TCP/IP Reference Model

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 192

192

## Reference Models

## The Benefits of Using a Layered Model (Cont.)

These are the benefits of using a layered model:

- Assist in protocol design because protocols that operate at a specific layer have defined information that they act upon and a defined interface to the layers above and below
- Foster competition because products from different vendors can work together
- Prevent technology or capability changes in one layer from affecting other layers above and below
- Provide a common language to describe networking functions and capabilities



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

193

## Reference Models

## The OSI Reference Model

OSI Model Layer	Description
7 - Application	Contains protocols used for process-to-process communications.
6 - Presentation	Provides for common representation of the data transferred between application layer services.
5 - Session	Provides services to the presentation layer and to manage data exchange.
4 - Transport	Defines services to segment, transfer, and reassemble the data for individual communications.
3 - Network	Provides services to exchange the individual pieces of data over the network.
2 - Data Link	Describes methods for exchanging data frames over a common media.
1 - Physical	Describes the means to activate, maintain, and de-activate physical connections.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

194

193

## Reference Models

## The TCP/IP Reference Model

TCP/IP Model Layer	Description
Application	Represents data to the user, plus encoding and dialog control.
Transport	Supports communication between various devices across diverse networks.
Internet	Determines the best path through the network.
Network Access	Controls the hardware devices and media that make up the network.



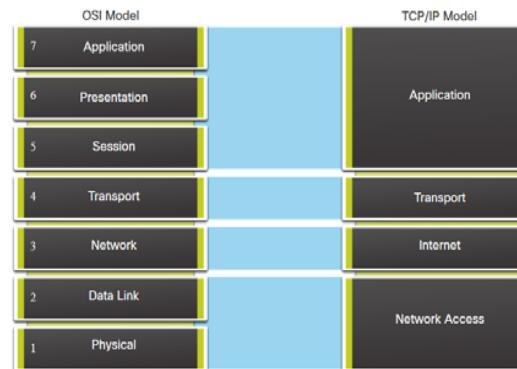
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

195

195

## Reference Models

## OSI and TCP/IP Model Comparison



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

196

- The OSI model divides the network access layer and the application layer of the TCP/IP model into multiple layers.
- The TCP/IP protocol suite does not specify which protocols to use when transmitting over a physical medium.
- OSI Layers 1 and 2 discuss the necessary procedures to access the media and the physical means to send data over a network.

## Reference Models

## Packet Tracer – Investigate the TCP/IP and OSI Models in Action

This simulation activity is intended to provide a foundation for understanding the TCP/IP protocol suite and the relationship to the OSI model. Simulation mode allows you to view the data contents being sent across the network at each layer.

In this Packet Tracer, you will:

- Part 1: Examine HTTP Web Traffic
- Part 2: Display Elements of the TCP/IP Protocol Suite



© 2010, 2011 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 197

197

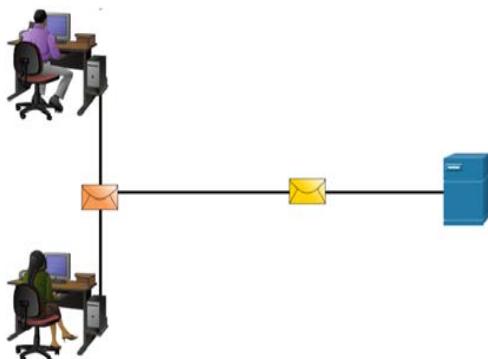
## 3.6 Data Encapsulation



© 2010, 2011 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 198

198

### Data Encapsulation Segmenting Messages



Segmenting is the process of breaking up messages into smaller units. Multiplexing is the processes of taking multiple streams of segmented data and interleaving them together.

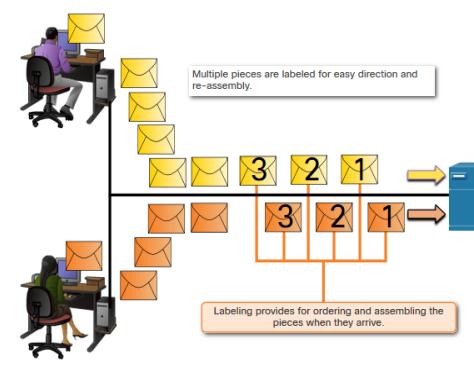
Segmenting messages has two primary benefits:

- Increases speed** - Large amounts of data can be sent over the network without tying up a communications link.
- Increases efficiency** - Only segments which fail to reach the destination need to be retransmitted, not the entire data stream.



© 2010, 2011 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 199

### Data Encapsulation Sequencing



Sequencing messages is the process of numbering the segments so that the message may be reassembled at the destination.

TCP is responsible for sequencing the individual segments.

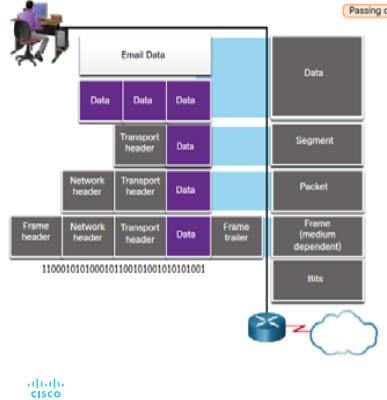


© 2010, 2011 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 200

199

200

## Data Encapsulation Protocol Data Units

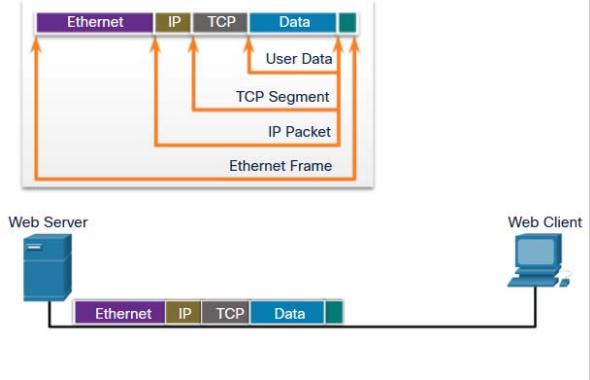


Encapsulation is the process where protocols add their information to the data.

- At each stage of the process, a PDU has a different name to reflect its new functions.
- There is no universal naming convention for PDUs, in this course, the PDUs are named according to the protocols of the TCP/IP suite.
- PDUs passing down the stack are as follows:
  1. Data (Data Stream)
  2. Segment
  3. Packet
  4. Frame
  5. Bits (Bit Stream)

## Data Encapsulation Encapsulation Example

- Encapsulation is a top down process.
- The level above does its process and then passes it down to the next level of the model. This process is repeated by each layer until it is sent out as a bit stream.

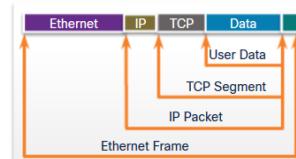


201

202

## Data Encapsulation De-encapsulation Example

- Data is de-encapsulated as it moves up the stack.
  - When a layer completes its process, that layer strips off its header and passes it up to the next level to be processed. This is repeated at each layer until it is a data stream that the application can process.
1. Received as Bits (Bit Stream)
  2. Frame
  3. Packet
  4. Segment
  5. Data (Data Stream)



203

## 3.7 Data Access

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 204

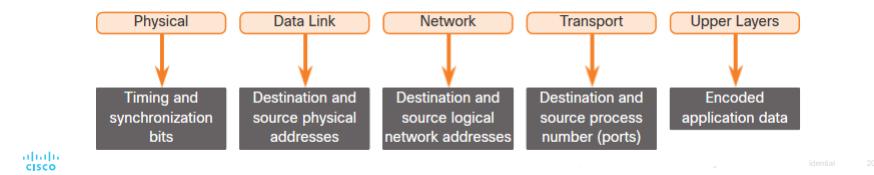
204

## Data Access Addresses

Both the data link and network layers use addressing to deliver data from source to destination.

**Network layer source and destination addresses** - Responsible for delivering the IP packet from original source to the final destination.

**Data link layer source and destination addresses** – Responsible for delivering the data link frame from one network interface card (NIC) to another NIC on the same network.



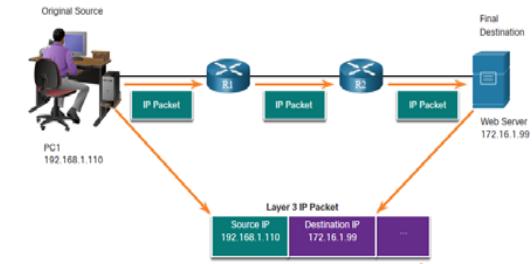
205

## Data Access Layer 3 Logical Address

The IP packet contains two IP addresses:

- **Source IP address** - The IP address of the sending device, original source of the packet.
- **Destination IP address** - The IP address of the receiving device, final destination of the packet.

These addresses may be on the same link or remote.



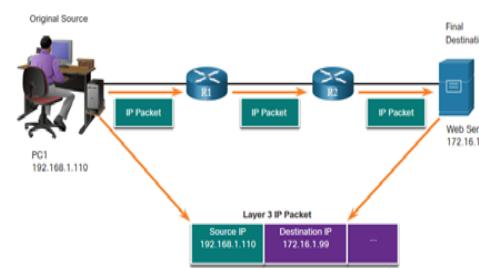
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 206

## Data Access Layer 3 Logical Address (Cont.)

An IP address contains two parts:

• **Network portion (IPv4) or Prefix (IPv6)**

- The left-most part of the address indicates the network group which the IP address is a member.
- Each LAN or WAN will have the same network portion.



• **Host portion (IPv4) or Interface ID (IPv6)**

- The remaining part of the address identifies a specific device within the group.
- This portion is unique for each device on the network.

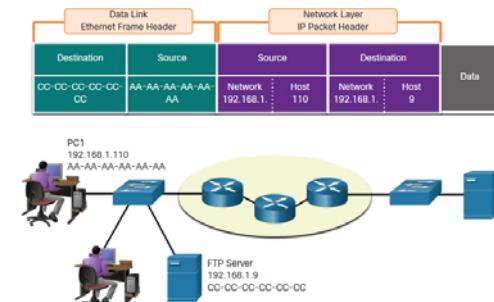
cisco

207

## Data Access Devices on the Same Network

When devices are on the same network the source and destination will have the same number in network portion of the address.

- PC1 – [192.168.1.110](#)
- FTP Server – [192.168.1.9](#)



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 208

208

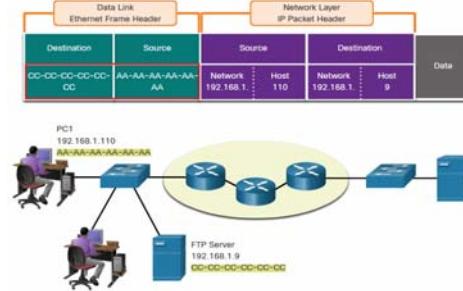
## Data Access

### Role of the Data Link Layer Addresses: Same IP Network

When devices are on the same Ethernet network the data link frame will use the actual MAC address of the destination NIC.

MAC addresses are physically embedded into the Ethernet NIC and are local addressing.

- The Source MAC address will be that of the originator on the link.
- The Destination MAC address will always be on the same link as the source, even if the ultimate destination is remote.



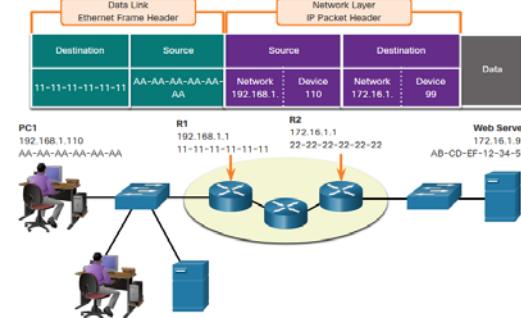
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 209

209

## Data Access

### Devices on a Remote Network

- What happens when the actual (ultimate) destination is not on the same LAN and is remote?
- What happens when PC1 tries to reach the Web Server?
- Does this impact the network and data link layers?



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 210

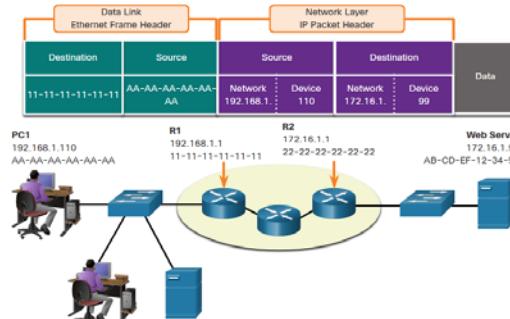
210

## Data Access

### Role of the Network Layer Addresses

When the source and destination have a different network portion, this means they are on different networks.

- PC1 – 192.168.1
- Web Server – 172.16.1



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 211

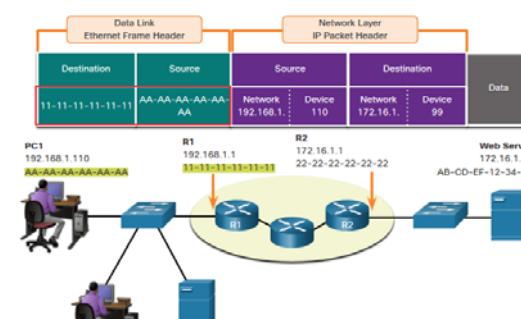
211

## Data Access

### Role of the Data Link Layer Addresses: Different IP Networks

When the final destination is remote, Layer 3 will provide Layer 2 with the local default gateway IP address, also known as the router address.

- The default gateway (DGW) is the router interface IP address that is part of this LAN and will be the “door” or “gateway” to all other remote locations.
- All devices on the LAN must be told about this address or their traffic will be confined to the LAN only.
- Once Layer 2 on PC1 forwards to the default gateway (Router), the router then can start the routing process of getting the information to actual destination.



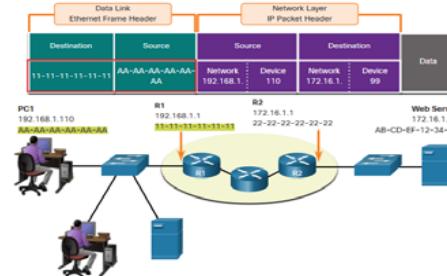
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 212

212

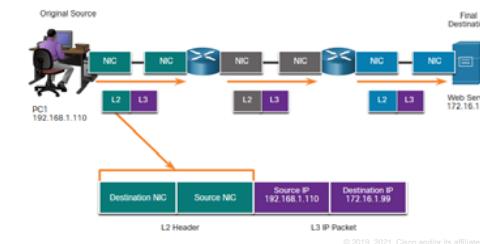
**Data Access****Role of the Data Link Layer Addresses: Different IP Networks (Cont.)**

- The data link addressing is local addressing so it will have a source and destination for each link.
- The MAC addressing for the first segment is :
  - Source – AA-AA-AA-AA-AA-AA (PC1) Sends the frame.
  - Destination – 11-11-11-11-11-11 (R1- Default Gateway MAC) Receives the frame.

**Note:** While the L2 local addressing will change from link to link or hop to hop, the L3 addressing remains the same.

**Data Access****Data Link Addresses**

- Since data link addressing is local addressing, it will have a source and destination for each segment or hop of the journey to the destination.
- The MAC addressing for the first segment is:
  - Source – (PC1 NIC) sends frame
  - Destination – (First Router- DGW interface) receives frame



213

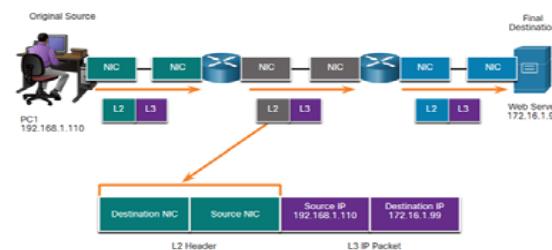
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 213

213

**Data Access****Data Link Addresses (Cont.)**

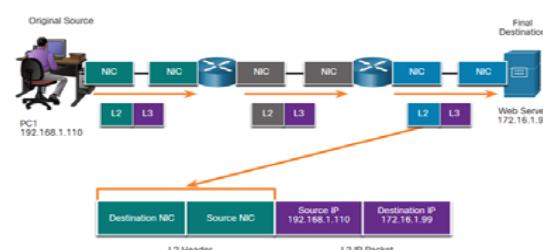
The MAC addressing for the second hop is:

- Source – (First Router- exit interface) sends frame
- Destination – (Second Router) receives frame

**Data Access****Data Link Addresses (Cont.)**

The MAC addressing for the last segment is:

- Source – (Second Router- exit interface) sends frame
- Destination – (Web Server NIC) receives frame



216

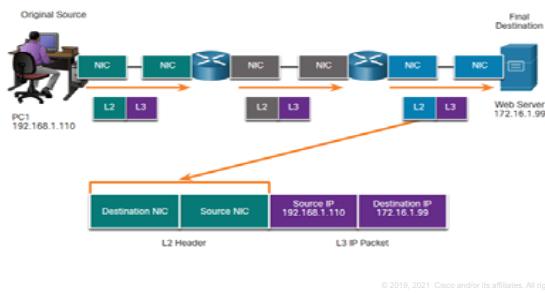
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 216

215

## Data Access

## Data Link Addresses (Cont.)

- Notice that the packet is not modified, but the frame is changed, therefore the L3 IP addressing does not change from segment to segment like the L2 MAC addressing.
- The L3 addressing remains the same since it is global and the ultimate destination is still the Web Server.



## Data Access

## Lab – Install Wireshark

In this lab you will do the following:

- Download and Install Wireshark

217

218

## 3.8 Module Practice and Quiz

## Data Access

## Lab – Use Wireshark to View Network Traffic

In this lab, you will do the following:

- Part 1: Capture and Analyze Local ICMP Data in Wireshark
- Part 2: Capture and Analyze Remote ICMP Data in Wireshark

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

219

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

47

219

220

## Module Practice and Quiz

### What did I learn in this module?

#### The Rules

- Protocols must have a sender and a receiver.
- Common computer protocols include these requirements: message encoding, formatting and encapsulation, size, timing, and delivery options.

#### Protocols

- To send a message across the network requires the use of several protocols.
- Each network protocol has its own function, format, and rules for communications.

#### Protocol Suites

- A protocol suite is a group of inter-related protocols.
- TCP/IP protocol suite are the protocols used today.

#### Standards Organizations

- Open standards encourage interoperability, competition, and innovation.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 221

## Module Practice and Quiz

### What did I learn in this module? (Cont.)

#### Reference Models

- The two models used in networking are the TCP/IP and the OSI model.
- The TCP/IP model has 4 layers and the OSI model has 7 layers.

#### Data Encapsulation

- The form that a piece of data takes at any layer is called a *protocol data unit (PDU)*.
- There are five different PDUs used in the data encapsulation process: data, segment, packet, frame, and bits

#### Data Access

- The Network and Data Link layers are going to provide addressing to move data through the network.
- Layer 3 will provide IP addressing and layer 2 will provide MAC addressing.
- The way these layers handle addressing will depend on whether the source and the destination are on the same network or if the destination is on a different network from the source.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 222

221

222

## New Terms and Commands

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• encoding</li> <li>• protocol</li> <li>• channel</li> <li>• flow control</li> <li>• response timeout</li> <li>• acknowledgement</li> <li>• unicast</li> <li>• multicast</li> <li>• broadcast</li> <li>• protocol suite</li> <li>• Ethernet</li> <li>• standard</li> <li>• proprietary protocol</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 802.3 (Ethernet)</li> <li>• 802.11 (wireless Ethernet)</li> <li>• segmentation</li> <li>• default gateway</li> <li>• Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)</li> <li>• Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP)</li> <li>• Post Office Protocol (POP)</li> <li>• Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)</li> <li>• transport</li> <li>• data link</li> <li>• network access</li> <li>• Advanced Research Projects Agency Network (ARPANET)</li> </ul> |
|---|---|

223

## New Terms and Commands (Cont.)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Internet Message Access Protocol (IMAP)</li> <li>• File Transfer Protocol (FTP)</li> <li>• Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP)</li> <li>• User Datagram Protocol (UDP)</li> <li>• Network Address Translation (NAT)</li> <li>• Internet Control Messaging Protocol (ICMP)</li> <li>• Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)</li> <li>• Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP)</li> <li>• Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)</li> <li>• Dynamic Host Configuration (DHCP)</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• encapsulation</li> <li>• de-encapsulation</li> <li>• protocol data unit (PDU)</li> <li>• segment</li> <li>• packet</li> <li>• frame</li> </ul> |
|--|---|

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 224

223

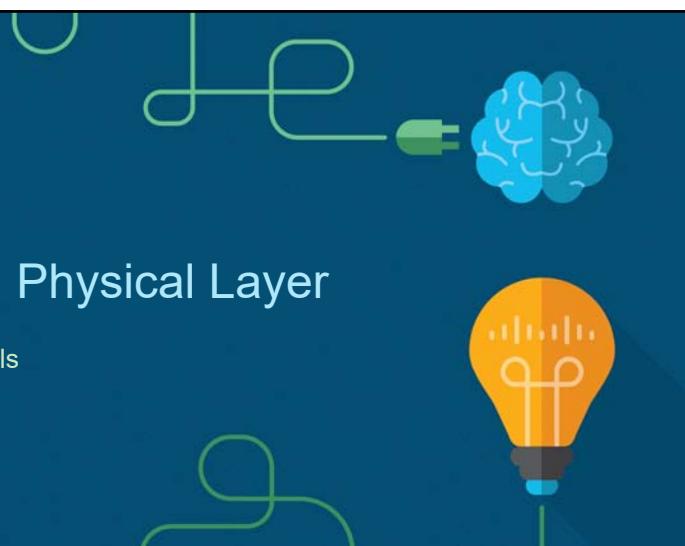
224



**Module 4: Physical Layer**

Instructor Materials

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)



225

## What to Expect in this Module

To facilitate learning, the following features within the GUI may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Animations	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Videos	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Check Your Understanding(CYU)	Per topic online quiz to help learners gauge content understanding.
Interactive Activities	A variety of formats to help learners gauge content understanding.
Syntax Checker	Small simulations that expose learners to Cisco command line to practice configuration skills.
PT Activity	Simulation and modeling activities designed to explore, acquire, reinforce, and expand skills.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 227

227



**What to Expect in this Module (Cont.)**

- To facilitate learning, the following features may be included in this module:

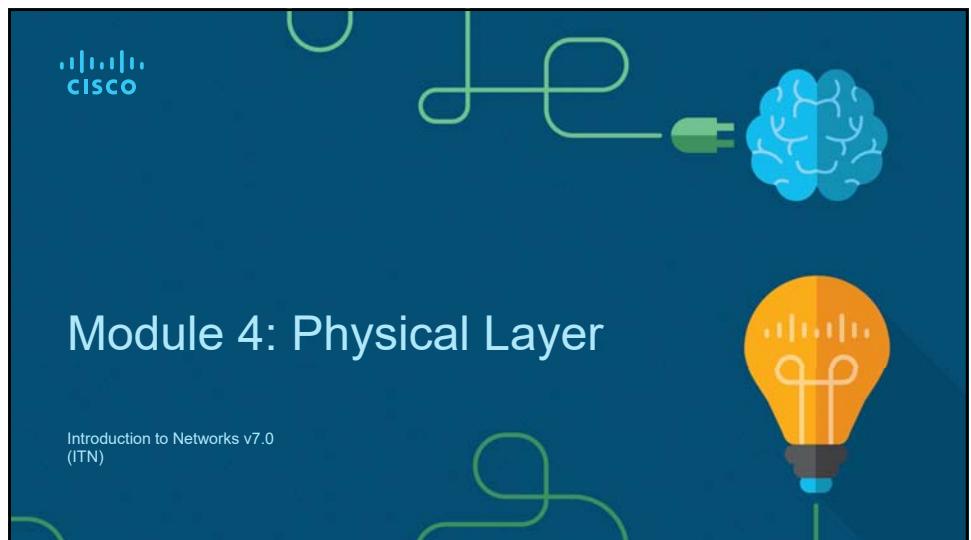
Feature	Description
Packet Tracer Physical Mode Activity	These activities are completed using Packet Tracer in Physical Mode.
Hands-On Labs	Labs designed for working with physical equipment.
Class Activities	These are found on the Instructor Resources page. Class Activities are designed to facilitate learning, class discussion, and collaboration.
Module Quizzes	Self-assessments that integrate concepts and skills learned throughout the series of topics presented in the module.
Module Summary	Briefly recaps module content.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 228



**Module 4: Physical Layer**

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)



235

228

## Module Objectives

**Module Title:** Physical Layer

**Module Objective:** Explain how physical layer protocols, services, and network media support communications across data networks.

Topic Title	Topic Objective
Purpose of the Physical Layer	Describe the purpose and functions of the physical layer in the network.
Physical Layer Characteristics	Describe characteristics of the physical layer.
Copper Cabling	Identify the basic characteristics of copper cabling.
UTP Cabling	Explain how UTP cable is used in Ethernet networks.
Fiber-Optic Cabling	Describe fiber optic cabling and its main advantages over other media.
Wireless Media	Connect devices using wired and wireless media.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

236

## 4.1 Purpose of the Physical Layer



© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

237

236

### Purpose of the Physical Layer The Physical Connection

- Before any network communications can occur, a physical connection to a local network must be established.
- This connection could be wired or wireless, depending on the setup of the network.
- This generally applies whether you are considering a corporate office or a home.
- A Network Interface Card (NIC) connects a device to the network.
- Some devices may have just one NIC, while others may have multiple NICs (Wired and/or Wireless, for example).
- Not all physical connections offer the same level of performance.

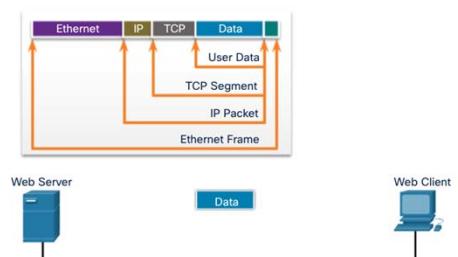


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

238

### Purpose of the Physical Layer The Physical Layer

- Transports bits across the network media
- Accepts a complete frame from the Data Link Layer and encodes it as a series of signals that are transmitted to the local media
- This is the last step in the encapsulation process.
- The next device in the path to the destination receives the bits and re-encapsulates the frame, then decides what to do with it.



Web Server

Web Client



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

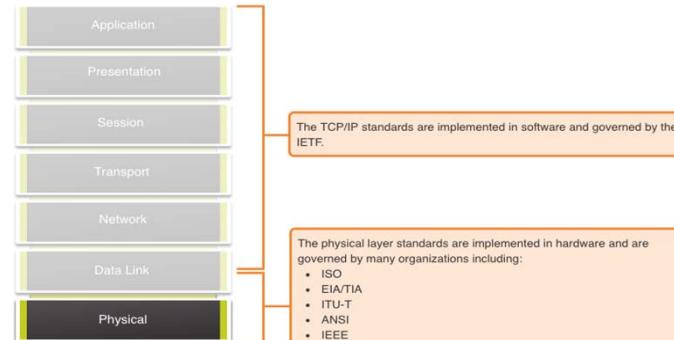
239

238

## 4.2 Physical Layer Characteristics

240

### Physical Layer Characteristics Physical Layer Standards



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 241

241

### Physical Layer Characteristics Physical Components

Physical Layer Standards address three functional areas:

- Physical Components
- Encoding
- Signaling

The Physical Components are the hardware devices, media, and other connectors that transmit the signals that represent the bits.

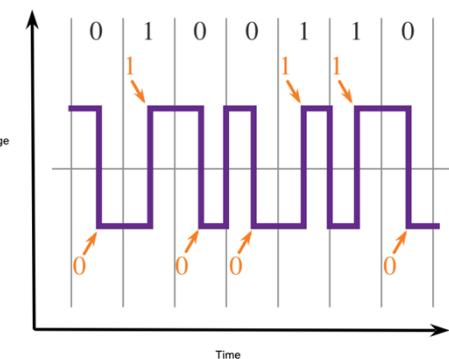
- Hardware components like NICs, interfaces and connectors, cable materials, and cable designs are all specified in standards associated with the physical layer.

242

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 242

### Physical Layer Characteristics Encoding

- Encoding converts the stream of bits into a format recognizable by the next device in the network path.
- This 'coding' provides predictable patterns that can be recognized by the next device.
- Examples of encoding methods include Manchester (shown in the figure), 4B/5B, and 8B/10B.

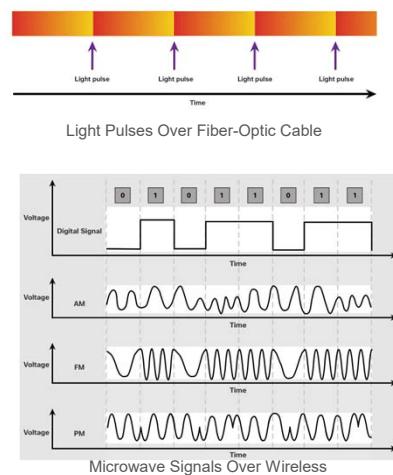
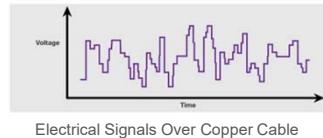


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 243

243

## Physical Layer Characteristics Signaling

- The signaling method is how the bit values, "1" and "0" are represented on the physical medium.
- The method of signaling will vary based on the type of medium being used.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

## Physical Layer Characteristics Bandwidth

- Bandwidth is the capacity at which a medium can carry data.
- Digital bandwidth measures the amount of data that can flow from one place to another in a given amount of time; how many bits can be transmitted in a second.
- Physical media properties, current technologies, and the laws of physics play a role in determining available bandwidth.

Unit of Bandwidth	Abbreviation	Equivalence
Bits per second	bps	1 bps = fundamental unit of bandwidth
Kilobits per second	Kbps	1 Kbps = 1,000 bps = $10^3$ bps
Megabits per second	Mbps	1 Mbps = 1,000,000 bps = $10^6$ bps
Gigabits per second	Gbps	1 Gbps = 1,000,000,000 bps = $10^9$ bps
Terabits per second	Tbps	1 Tbps = 1,000,000,000,000 bps = $10^{12}$ bps

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

244

245

## Physical Layer Characteristics Bandwidth Terminology

### Latency

- Amount of time, including delays, for data to travel from one given point to another

### Throughput

- The measure of the transfer of bits across the media over a given period of time

### Goodput

- The measure of usable data transferred over a given period of time
- Goodput = Throughput - traffic overhead

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

## 4.3 Copper Cabling

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

246

247

## Copper Cabling Characteristics of Copper Cabling

Copper cabling is the most common type of cabling used in networks today. It is inexpensive, easy to install, and has low resistance to electrical current flow.

### Limitations:

- Attenuation – the longer the electrical signals have to travel, the weaker they get.
- The electrical signal is susceptible to interference from two sources, which can distort and corrupt the data signals (Electromagnetic Interference (EMI) and Radio Frequency Interference (RFI) and Crosstalk).

### Mitigation:

- Strict adherence to cable length limits will mitigate attenuation.
- Some kinds of copper cable mitigate EMI and RFI by using metallic shielding and grounding.
- Some kinds of copper cable mitigate crosstalk by twisting opposing circuit pair wires together.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 248

## Copper Cabling Types of Copper Cabling



Unshielded Twisted-Pair (UTP) Cable



Shielded Twisted-Pair (STP) Cable



Coaxial Cable

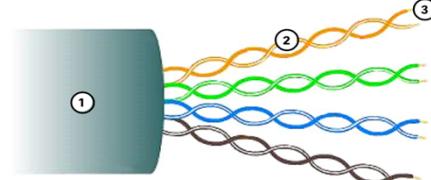


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 249

248

249

## Copper Cabling Unshielded Twisted Pair (UTP)



- UTP is the most common networking media.
- Terminated with RJ-45 connectors
- Interconnects hosts with intermediary network devices.

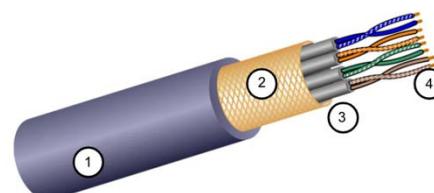
### Key Characteristics of UTP

1. The outer jacket protects the copper wires from physical damage.
2. Twisted pairs protect the signal from interference.
3. Color-coded plastic insulation electrically isolates the wires from each other and identifies each pair.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 250

## Copper Cabling Shielded Twisted Pair (STP)



- Better noise protection than UTP
- More expensive than UTP
- Harder to install than UTP
- Terminated with RJ-45 connectors
- Interconnects hosts with intermediary network devices

### Key Characteristics of STP

1. The outer jacket protects the copper wires from physical damage
2. Braided or foil shield provides EMI/RFI protection
3. Foil shield for each pair of wires provides EMI/RFI protection
4. Color-coded plastic insulation electrically isolates the wires from each other and identifies each pair



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 251

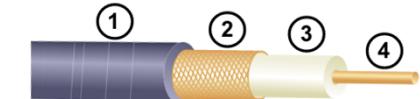
250

251

## Copper Cabling Coaxial Cable

Consists of the following:

1. Outer cable jacket to prevent minor physical damage
2. A woven copper braid, or metallic foil, acts as the second wire in the circuit and as a shield for the inner conductor.
3. A layer of flexible plastic insulation
4. A copper conductor is used to transmit the electronic signals.



There are different types of connectors used with coax cable.

Commonly used in the following situations:

- Wireless installations - attach antennas to wireless devices
- Cable internet installations - customer premises wiring



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 252

## 4.4 UTP Cabling



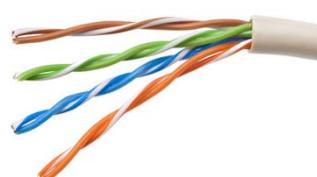
© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 253

252

## UTP Cabling Properties of UTP Cabling

UTP has four pairs of color-coded copper wires twisted together and encased in a flexible plastic sheath. No shielding is used. UTP relies on the following properties to limit crosstalk:

- Cancellation - Each wire in a pair of wires uses opposite polarity. One wire is negative, the other wire is positive. They are twisted together and the magnetic fields effectively cancel each other and outside EMI/RFI.
- Variation in twists per foot in each wire - Each wire is twisted a different amount, which helps prevent crosstalk amongst the wires in the cable.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 254

## UTP Cabling UTP Cabling Standards and Connectors

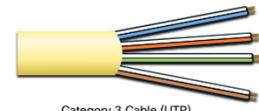
Standards for UTP are established by the TIA/EIA. TIA/EIA-568 standardizes elements like:

- Cable Types
- Cable Lengths
- Connectors
- Cable Termination
- Testing Methods

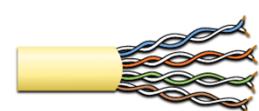
Electrical standards for copper cabling are established by the IEEE, which rates cable according to its performance.

Examples include:

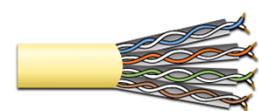
- Category 3
- Category 5 and 5e
- Category 6



Category 3 Cable (UTP)



Category 5 and 5e Cable (UTP)



Category 6 Cable (UTP)



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 255

253

254

**UTP Cabling****UTP Cabling Standards and Connectors (Cont.)**

RJ-45 Connector



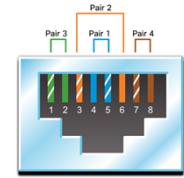
Poorly terminated UTP cable



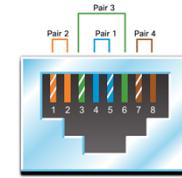
RJ-45 Socket



Properly terminated UTP cable

**UTP Cabling****Straight-through and Crossover UTP Cables**

T568A



T568B

Cable Type	Standard	Application
Ethernet Straight-through	Both ends T568A or T568B	Host to Network Device
Ethernet Crossover *	One end T568A, other end T568B	Host-to-Host, Switch-to-Switch, Router-to-Router
* Considered Legacy due to most NICs using Auto-MDIX to sense cable type and complete connection		
Rollover	Cisco Proprietary	Host serial port to Router or Switch Console Port, using an adapter



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 257

256

257

## 4.5 Fiber-Optic Cabling



© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 258

**Fiber-Optic Cabling****Properties of Fiber-Optic Cabling**

- Not as common as UTP because of the expense involved
- Ideal for some networking scenarios
- Transmits data over longer distances at higher bandwidth than any other networking media
- Less susceptible to attenuation, and completely immune to EMI/RFI
- Made of flexible, extremely thin strands of very pure glass
- Uses a laser or LED to encode bits as pulses of light
- The fiber-optic cable acts as a wave guide to transmit light between the two ends with minimal signal loss



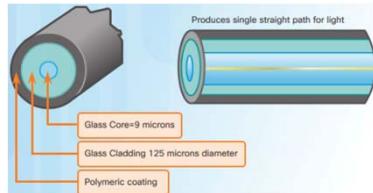
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 259

258

259

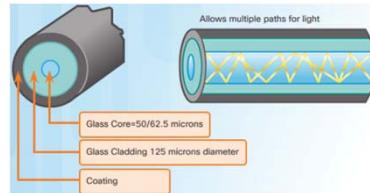
## Fiber-Optic Cabling Types of Fiber Media

### Single-Mode Fiber



- Very small core
- Uses expensive lasers
- Long-distance applications

### Multimode Fiber



- Larger core
- Uses less expensive LEDs
- LEDs transmit at different angles
- Up to 10 Gbps over 550 meters

Dispersion refers to the spreading out of a light pulse over time. Increased dispersion means increased loss of signal strength. MMF has greater dispersion than SMF, with a maximum cable distance for MMF is 550 meters.

CISCO

© 2010, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 260

## Fiber-Optic Cabling Fiber-Optic Cabling Usage

Fiber-optic cabling is now being used in four types of industry:

- Enterprise Networks** - Used for backbone cabling applications and interconnecting infrastructure devices
- Fiber-to-the-Home (FTTH)** - Used to provide always-on broadband services to homes and small businesses
- Long-Haul Networks** - Used by service providers to connect countries and cities
- Submarine Cable Networks** - Used to provide reliable high-speed, high-capacity solutions capable of surviving in harsh undersea environments at up to transoceanic distances.

Our focus in this course is the use of fiber within the enterprise.

CISCO

© 2010, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 261

260

261

## Fiber-Optic Cabling Fiber-Optic Connectors



Straight-Tip (ST) Connectors



Lucent Connector (LC) Simplex Connectors



Subscriber Connector (SC) Connectors



Duplex Multimode LC Connectors

CISCO

© 2010, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 262

## Fiber-Optic Cabling Fiber Patch Cords



SC-SC MM Patch Cord



LC-LC SM Patch Cord



ST-LC MM Patch Cord



ST-SC SM Patch Cord

A yellow jacket is for single-mode fiber cables and orange (or aqua) for multimode fiber cables.

CISCO

© 2010, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 263

262

263

## Fiber-Optic Cabling Fiber versus Copper

Optical fiber is primarily used as backbone cabling for high-traffic, point-to-point connections between data distribution facilities and for the interconnection of buildings in multi-building campuses.

Implementation Issues	UTP Cabling	Fiber-Optic Cabling
Bandwidth supported	10 Mb/s - 10 Gb/s	10 Mb/s - 100 Gb/s
Distance	Relatively short (1 - 100 meters)	Relatively long (1 - 100,000 meters)
Immunity to EMI and RFI	Low	High (Completely immune)
Immunity to electrical hazards	Low	High (Completely immune)
Media and connector costs	Lowest	Highest
Installation skills required	Lowest	Highest
Safety precautions	Lowest	Highest



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 264

## 4.6 Wireless Media



© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 265

264

265

## Wireless Media Properties of Wireless Media

It carries electromagnetic signals representing binary digits using radio or microwave frequencies. This provides the greatest mobility option. Wireless connection numbers continue to increase.

Some of the limitations of wireless:

- **Coverage area** - Effective coverage can be significantly impacted by the physical characteristics of the deployment location.
- **Interference** - Wireless is susceptible to interference and can be disrupted by many common devices.
- **Security** - Wireless communication coverage requires no access to a physical strand of media, so anyone can gain access to the transmission.
- **Shared medium** - WLANs operate in half-duplex, which means only one device can send or receive at a time. Many users accessing the WLAN simultaneously results in reduced bandwidth for each user.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 266

## Wireless Media Types of Wireless Media

The IEEE and telecommunications industry standards for wireless data communications cover both the data link and physical layers. In each of these standards, physical layer specifications dictate:

- Data to radio signal encoding methods
- Frequency and power of transmission
- Signal reception and decoding requirements
- Antenna design and construction

Wireless Standards:

- **Wi-Fi (IEEE 802.11)** - Wireless LAN (WLAN) technology
- **Bluetooth (IEEE 802.15)** - Wireless Personal Area network (WPAN) standard
- **WiMAX (IEEE 802.16)** - Uses a point-to-multipoint topology to provide broadband wireless access
- **Zigbee (IEEE 802.15.4)** - Low data-rate, low power-consumption communications, primarily for Internet of Things (IoT) applications



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 267

266

267

## Wireless Media Wireless LAN

In general, a Wireless LAN (WLAN) requires the following devices:

- **Wireless Access Point (AP)** - Concentrate wireless signals from users and connect to the existing copper-based network infrastructure
- **Wireless NIC Adapters** - Provide wireless communications capability to network hosts

There are a number of WLAN standards. When purchasing WLAN equipment, ensure compatibility, and interoperability.

Network Administrators must develop and apply stringent security policies and processes to protect WLANs from unauthorized access and damage.


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 268

268

## Wireless Media Packet Tracer – Connect a Wired and Wireless LAN

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Connect to the Cloud
- Connect a Router
- Connect Remaining Devices
- Verify Connections
- Examine the Physical Topology


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 269

269

## Wireless Media Lab – View Wired and Wireless NIC Information

In this lab, you will complete the following objectives:

- Identify and Work with PC NICs
- Identify and Use the System Tray Network Icons


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 270

270

## 4.7 Module Practice and Quiz


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 271

271

**Module Practice and Quiz****Packet Tracer – Physical Layer Exploration– Physical Mode**

In this Packet Tracer Physical Mode (PTPM) activity, you will complete the following:

- Examine Local IP Addressing Information
- Trace the Path Between Source and Destination



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

272

**Module Practice and Quiz****Packet Tracer – Connect the Physical Layer**

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Identify Physical Characteristics of Internetworking Devices
- Select Correct Modules for Connectivity
- Connect Devices
- Check Connectivity



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

273

272

273

**Module Practice and Quiz****What did I learn in this module?**

- Before any network communications can occur, a physical connection to a local network, either wired or wireless, must be established.
- The physical layer consists of electronic circuitry, media, and connectors developed by engineers.
- The physical layer standards address three functional areas: physical components, encoding, and signaling.
- Three types of copper cabling are: UTP, STP, and coaxial cable (coax).
- UTP cabling conforms to the standards established jointly by the TIA/EIA. The electrical characteristics of copper cabling are defined by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE).
- The main cable types that are obtained by using specific wiring conventions are Ethernet Straight-through and Ethernet Crossover.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

274

**Module Practice and Quiz****What did I learn in this module (Cont.)?**

- Optical fiber cable transmits data over longer distances and at higher bandwidths than any other networking media.
- There are four types of fiber-optic connectors: ST, SC, LC, and duplex multimode LC.
- Fiber-optic patch cords include SC-SC multimode, LC-LC single-mode, ST-LC multimode, and SC-ST single-mode.
- Wireless media carry electromagnetic signals that represent the binary digits of data communications using radio or microwave frequencies. Wireless does have some limitations, including coverage area, interference, security, and the problems that occur with any shared medium.
- Wireless standards include the following: Wi-Fi (IEEE 802.11), Bluetooth (IEEE 802.15), WiMAX (IEEE 802.16), and Zigbee (IEEE 802.15.4).
- Wireless LAN (WLAN) requires a wireless AP and wireless NIC adapters.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

275

274

275

## Module 4: Physical Layer

**New Terms and Commands**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Association (TIA/EIA)</li> <li>• latency</li> <li>• throughput</li> <li>• goodput</li> <li>• Electromagnetic interference (EMI)</li> <li>• Radio frequency interference (RFI)</li> <li>• Crosstalk</li> <li>• Unshielded Twisted Pair (UTP)</li> <li>• Shielded Twisted Pair (STP)</li> <li>• Coaxial cable</li> <li>• RJ-45</li> <li>• Cancellation</li> <li>• TIA/EIA-568</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ethernet Straight-through</li> <li>• Ethernet crossover</li> <li>• Rollover</li> <li>• Single-Mode Fiber (SMF)</li> <li>• Multimode (MMF)</li> <li>• Straight-tip (ST) Connectors</li> <li>• Subscriber Connector (SC) Connectors</li> <li>• Lucent Connector (LC) Simplex Connectors</li> <li>• Duplex Multimode LC Connectors</li> <li>• Bluetooth (IEEE 802.15)</li> <li>• WiMAX (IEEE 802.16)</li> <li>• Zigbee (IEEE 802.15.4)</li> <li>• Wireless Access Point (AP)</li> </ul> |
|---|---|

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

276

## Module 5: Number Systems

**Instructor Materials**

Introduction to Networks v7.0 (ITN)

277

**What to Expect in this Module**

- To facilitate learning, the following features within the GUI may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Animations	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Videos	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Check Your Understanding(CYU)	Per topic online quiz to help learners gauge content understanding.
Interactive Activities	A variety of formats to help learners gauge content understanding.
Syntax Checker	Small simulations that expose learners to Cisco command line to practice configuration skills.
PT Activity	Simulation and modeling activities designed to explore, acquire, reinforce, and expand skills.

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

279

**What to Expect in this Module (Cont.)**

- To facilitate learning, the following features may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Hands-On Labs	Labs designed for working with physical equipment.
Class Activities	These are found on the Instructor Resources page. Class Activities are designed to facilitate learning, class discussion, and collaboration.
Module Quizzes	Self-assessments that integrate concepts and skills learned throughout the series of topics presented in the module.
Module Summary	Briefly recaps module content.

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

280

279

60



**Module 5: Number Systems**

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)



284

## 5.1 Binary Number System

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 286

**Module Objectives**

**Module Title:** Number Systems

**Module Objective:** Calculate numbers between decimal, binary, and hexadecimal systems.

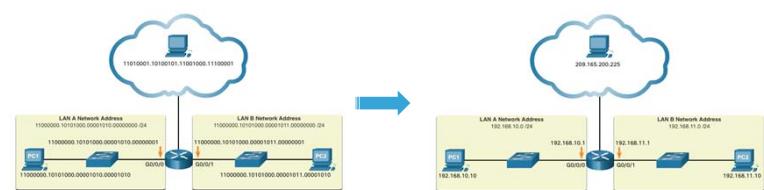
Topic Title	Topic Objective
<b>Binary Number System</b>	Calculate numbers between decimal and binary systems.
<b>Hexadecimal Number System</b>	Calculate numbers between decimal and hexadecimal systems.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 285

285

**Binary Number System**  
**Binary and IPv4 Addresses**

- Binary numbering system consists of 1s and 0s, called bits
- Decimal numbering system consists of digits 0 through 9
- Hosts, servers, and network equipment use binary addressing to identify each other.
- Each address is made up of a string of 32 bits, divided into four sections called octets.
- Each octet contains 8 bits (or 1 byte) separated by a dot.
- For ease of use by people, this dotted notation is converted to dotted decimal.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 287

287

## Binary Number System Video – Convert Between Binary and Decimal Numbering Systems

This video will cover the following:

- Positional notation review
- Powers of 10 review
- Decimal – base 10 numbering review
- Binary – base 2 numbering review
- Convert an IP address in binary to decimal numbering



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 288

## Binary Number System Binary Positional Notation

- Positional notation means that a digit represents different values depending on the “position” the digit occupies in the sequence of numbers.
- The decimal positional notation system operates as shown in the tables below.

Radix	10	10	10	10
Position in Number	3	2	1	0
Calculate	$(10^3)$	$(10^2)$	$(10^1)$	$(10^0)$
Position Value	1000	100	10	1

	Thousands	Hundreds	Tens	Ones
Positional Value	1000	100	10	1
Decimal Number (1234)	1	2	3	4
Calculate	$1 \times 1000$	$2 \times 100$	$3 \times 10$	$4 \times 1$
Add them up...	1000	+ 200	+ 30	+ 4
Result	1,234			



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 289

288

## Binary Number System Binary Positional Notation (Cont.)

The binary positional notation system operates as shown in the tables below.

Radix	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
Position in Number	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Calculate	$(2^7)$	$(2^6)$	$(2^5)$	$(2^4)$	$(2^3)$	$(2^2)$	$(2^1)$	$(2^0)$
Position Value	128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1



Positional Value	128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1
Binary Number (11000000)	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
Calculate	$1 \times 128$	$1 \times 64$	$0 \times 32$	$0 \times 16$	$0 \times 8$	$0 \times 4$	$0 \times 2$	$0 \times 1$
Add Them Up...	128	+ 64	+ 0	+ 0	+ 0	+ 0	+ 0	+ 0
Result	192							



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 290

## Binary Number System Convert Binary to Decimal

Convert 11000000.10101000.00001011.00001010 to decimal.

Positional Value	128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1
Binary Number (11000000)	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
Calculate	$1 \times 128$	$1 \times 64$	$0 \times 32$	$0 \times 16$	$0 \times 8$	$0 \times 4$	$0 \times 2$	$0 \times 1$
Add Them Up...	128	+ 64	+ 0	+ 0	+ 0	+ 0	+ 0	+ 0
Binary Number (01010000)	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0
Calculate	$0 \times 128$	$0 \times 64$	$1 \times 32$	$0 \times 16$	$1 \times 8$	$0 \times 4$	$1 \times 2$	$0 \times 1$
Add Them Up...	0	+ 0	+ 32	+ 0	+ 8	+ 0	+ 0	+ 0
Binary Number (00001011)	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1
Calculate	$0 \times 128$	$0 \times 64$	$0 \times 32$	$0 \times 16$	$1 \times 8$	$0 \times 4$	$1 \times 2$	$1 \times 1$
Add Them Up...	0	+ 0	+ 0	+ 0	+ 8	+ 0	+ 2	+ 1
Binary Number (00001010)	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
Calculate	$0 \times 128$	$0 \times 64$	$0 \times 32$	$0 \times 16$	$1 \times 8$	$0 \times 4$	$1 \times 2$	$0 \times 1$
Add Them Up...	0	+ 0	+ 0	+ 0	+ 8	+ 0	+ 2	+ 0

192

168

192.168.11.10

11

10



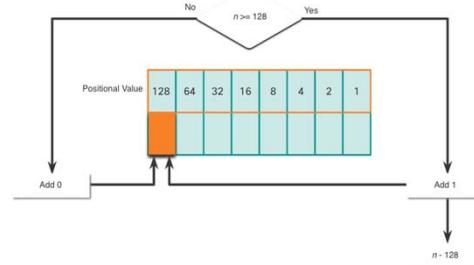
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 291

291

## Binary Number System Decimal to Binary Conversion

The binary positional value table is useful in converting a dotted decimal IPv4 address to binary.

- Start in the 128 position (the most significant bit). Is the decimal number of the octet ( $n$ ) equal to or greater than 128?
- If no, record a binary 0 in the 128 positional value and move to the 64 positional value.
- If yes, record a binary 1 in the 128 positional value, subtract 128 from the decimal number, and move to the 64 positional value.
- Repeat these steps through the 1 positional value.



Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

292

## Binary Number System Decimal to Binary Conversion Example

- Convert decimal 168 to binary

Is 168 > 128?

- Yes, enter 1 in 128 position and subtract 128 ( $168-128=40$ )

Is 40 > 64?

- No, enter 0 in 64 position and move on

Is 40 > 32?

- Yes, enter 1 in 32 position and subtract 32 ( $40-32=8$ )

Is 8 > 16?

- No, enter 0 in 16 position and move on

Is 8 > 8?

- Equal. Enter 1 in 8 position and subtract 8 ( $8-8=0$ )

No values left. Enter 0 in remaining binary positions

128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1
1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0

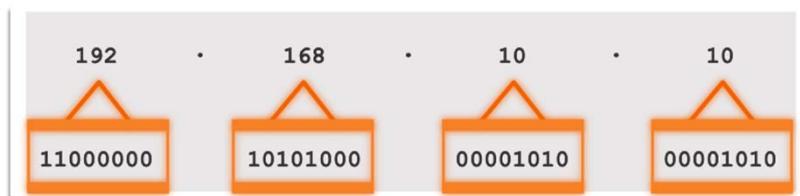
Decimal 168 is written as 10101000 in binary

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

293

## Binary Number System IPv4 Addresses

- Routers and computers only understand binary, while humans work in decimal. It is important for you to gain a thorough understanding of these two numbering systems and how they are used in networking.



Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

294

## 5.2 Hexadecimal Number System

295

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

## Hexadecimal Number System

### Hexadecimal and IPv6 Addresses

- To understand IPv6 addresses, you must be able to convert hexadecimal to decimal and vice versa.
- Hexadecimal is a base sixteen numbering system, using the digits 0 through 9 and letters A to F.
- It is easier to express a value as a single hexadecimal digit than as four binary bit.
- Hexadecimal is used to represent IPv6 addresses and MAC addresses.

Decimal	Binary	Hexadecimal
0	0000	0
1	0001	1
2	0010	2
3	0011	3
4	0100	4
5	0101	5
6	0110	6
7	0111	7
8	1000	8
9	1001	9
10	1010	A
11	1011	B
12	1100	C
13	1101	D
14	1110	E
15	1111	F

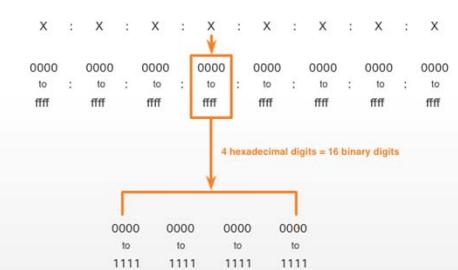


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 296

## Hexadecimal Number System

### Hexadecimal and IPv6 Addresses (Cont.)

- IPv6 addresses are 128 bits in length. Every 4 bits is represented by a single hexadecimal digit. That makes the IPv6 address a total of 32 hexadecimal values.
- The figure shows the preferred method of writing out an IPv6 address, with each X representing four hexadecimal values.
- Each four hexadecimal character group is referred to as a hexet.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 297

296

297

## Hexadecimal Number System

### Video – Converting Between Hexadecimal and Decimal Numbering Systems

This video will cover the following:

- Characteristics of the Hexadecimal System
- Convert from Hexadecimal to Decimal
- Convert from Decimal to Hexadecimal



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 298

## Hexadecimal Number System

### Decimal to Hexadecimal Conversions

Follow the steps listed to convert decimal numbers to hexadecimal values:

- Convert the decimal number to 8-bit binary strings.
- Divide the binary strings in groups of four starting from the rightmost position.
- Convert each four binary numbers into their equivalent hexadecimal digit.

For example, 168 converted into hex using the three-step process.

- 168 in binary is 10101000.
- 10101000 in two groups of four binary digits is 1010 and 1000.
- 1010 is hex A and 1000 is hex 8, so 168 is A8 in hexadecimal.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 299

298

299

## Hexadecimal Number System

### Hexadecimal to Decimal Conversions

Follow the steps listed to convert hexadecimal numbers to decimal values:

- Convert the hexadecimal number to 4-bit binary strings.
- Create 8-bit binary grouping starting from the rightmost position.
- Convert each 8-bit binary grouping into their equivalent decimal digit.

For example, D2 converted into decimal using the three-step process:

- D2 in 4-bit binary strings is 1101 and 0010.
- 1101 and 0010 is 11010010 in an 8-bit grouping.
- 11010010 in binary is equivalent to 210 in decimal, so D2 is 210 in decimal



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 300

## 5.3 Module Practice and Quiz



© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 301

300

## Module Practice and Quiz

### What did I learn in this module?

- Binary is a base two numbering system that consists of the numbers 0 and 1, called bits.
- Decimal is a base ten numbering system that consists of the numbers 0 through 9.
- Binary is what hosts, servers, and networking equipment uses to identify each other.
- Hexadecimal is a base sixteen numbering system that consists of the numbers 0 through 9 and the letters A to F.
- Hexadecimal is used to represent IPv6 addresses and MAC addresses.
- IPv6 addresses are 128 bits long, and every 4 bits is represented by a hexadecimal digit for a total of 32 hexadecimal digits.
- To convert hexadecimal to decimal, you must first convert the hexadecimal to binary, then convert the binary to decimal.
- To convert decimal to hexadecimal, you must first convert the decimal to binary and then the binary to hexadecimal.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 302

## Module 5: Number Systems

### New Terms and Commands

- dotted decimal notation
- positional notation
- base 10
- base 16
- radix
- octet
- hextet



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 303

302

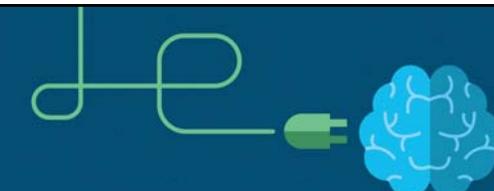
303



**Module 6: Data Link Layer**

Instructor Materials

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)




304

## What to Expect in this Module

- To facilitate learning, the following features within the GUI may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Animations	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Videos	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Check Your Understanding(CYU)	Per topic online quiz to help learners gauge content understanding.
Interactive Activities	A variety of formats to help learners gauge content understanding.
Syntax Checker	Small simulations that expose learners to Cisco command line to practice configuration skills.
PT Activity	Simulation and modeling activities designed to explore, acquire, reinforce, and expand skills.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 306

306

## What to Expect in this Module (Cont.)

- To facilitate learning, the following features may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Hands-On Labs	Labs designed for working with physical equipment.
Class Activities	These are found on the Instructor Resources page. Class Activities are designed to facilitate learning, class discussion, and collaboration.
Module Quizzes	Self-assessments that integrate concepts and skills learned throughout the series of topics presented in the module.
Module Summary	Briefly recaps module content.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 307

307



**Module 6: Data Link Layer**

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)




312

## Module Objectives

**Module Title:** Data Link Layer

**Module Objective:** Explain how media access control in the data link layer supports communication across networks.

Topic Title	Topic Objective
Purpose of the Data Link Layer	Describe the purpose and function of the data link layer in preparing communication for transmission on specific media.
Topologies	Compare the characteristics of media access control methods on WAN and LAN topologies.
Data Link Frame	Describe the characteristics and functions of the data link frame.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

313

313

## 6.1 Purpose of the Data Link Layer

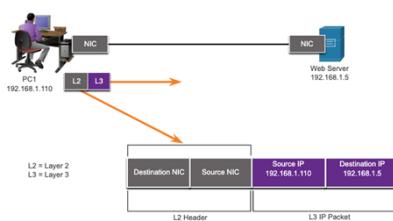


© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

314

### Purpose of the Data Link Layer The Data Link Layer

- The Data Link layer is responsible for communications between end-device network interface cards.
- It allows upper layer protocols to access the physical layer media and encapsulates Layer 3 packets (IPv4 and IPv6) into Layer 2 Frames.
- It also performs error detection and rejects corrupt frames.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

315

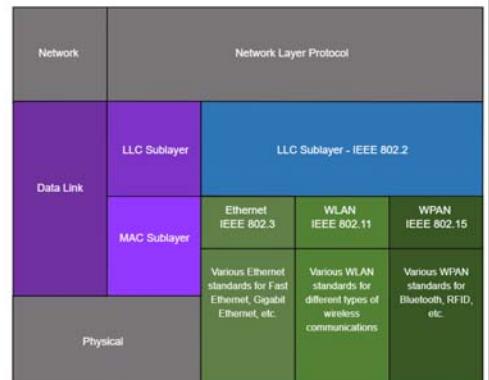
315

### Purpose of the Data Link Layer IEEE 802 LAN/MAN Data Link Sublayers

IEEE 802 LAN/MAN standards are specific to the type of network (Ethernet, WLAN, WPAN, etc).

The Data Link Layer consists of two sublayers. **Logical Link Control (LLC)** and **Media Access Control (MAC)**.

- The LLC sublayer communicates between the networking software at the upper layers and the device hardware at the lower layers.
- The MAC sublayer is responsible for data encapsulation and media access control.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

316

316

## Purpose of the Data Link Layer Providing Access to Media

Packets exchanged between nodes may experience numerous data link layers and media transitions.

At each hop along the path, a router performs four basic Layer 2 functions:

- Accepts a frame from the network medium.
- De-encapsulates the frame to expose the encapsulated packet.
- Re-encapsulates the packet into a new frame.
- Forwards the new frame on the medium of the next network segment.


© 2010, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
317

## Purpose of the Data Link Layer Data Link Layer Standards

Data link layer protocols are defined by engineering organizations:

- Institute for Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE).
- International Telecommunications Union (ITU).
- International Organizations for Standardization (ISO).
- American National Standards Institute (ANSI).


© 2010, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
318
317
318

## 6.2 Topologies


© 2010, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
319

### Topologies Physical and Logical Topologies

The topology of a network is the arrangement and relationship of the network devices and the interconnections between them.

There are two types of topologies used when describing networks:

- **Physical topology** – shows physical connections and how devices are interconnected.
- **Logical topology** – identifies the virtual connections between devices using device interfaces and IP addressing schemes.


© 2010, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
320
320

## Topologies WAN Topologies

There are three common physical WAN topologies:

- **Point-to-point** – the simplest and most common WAN topology. Consists of a permanent link between two endpoints.
- **Hub and spoke** – similar to a star topology where a central site interconnects branch sites through point-to-point links.
- **Mesh** – provides high availability but requires every end system to be connected to every other end system.

 321

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 321

## Topologies Point-to-Point WAN Topology

- Physical point-to-point topologies directly connect two nodes.
- The nodes may not share the media with other hosts.
- Because all frames on the media can only travel to or from the two nodes, Point-to-Point WAN protocols can be very simple.



 322

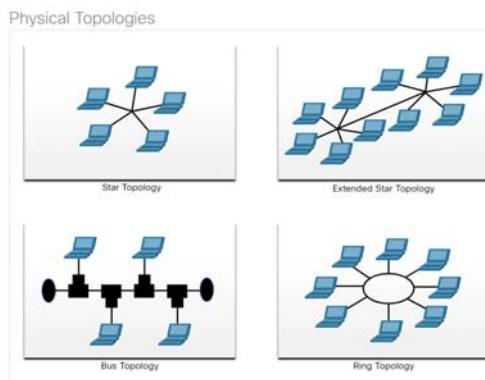
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 322

## Topologies LAN Topologies

End devices on LANs are typically interconnected using a star or extended star topology. Star and extended star topologies are easy to install, very scalable and easy to troubleshoot.

Early Ethernet and Legacy Token Ring technologies provide two additional topologies:

- **Bus** – All end systems chained together and terminated on each end.
- **Ring** – Each end system is connected to its respective neighbors to form a ring.



 323

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 323

## Topologies Half and Full Duplex Communication

### Half-duplex communication

- Only allows one device to send or receive at a time on a shared medium.
- Used on WLANs and legacy bus topologies with Ethernet hubs.

### Full-duplex communication

- Allows both devices to simultaneously transmit and receive on a shared medium.
- Ethernet switches operate in full-duplex mode.

 324

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 324

**Topologies****Access Control Methods****Contention-based access**

All nodes operating in half-duplex, competing for use of the medium. Examples are:

- Carrier sense multiple access with collision detection (CSMA/CD) as used on legacy bus-topology Ethernet.
- Carrier sense multiple access with collision avoidance (CSMA/CA) as used on Wireless LANs.

**Controlled access**

- Deterministic access where each node has its own time on the medium.
- Used on legacy networks such as Token Ring and ARCNET.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

325

**Topologies****Contention-Based Access – CSMA/CD****CSMA/CD**

- Used by legacy Ethernet LANs.
- Operates in half-duplex mode where only one device sends or receives at a time.
- Uses a collision detection process to govern when a device can send and what happens if multiple devices send at the same time.

**CSMA/CD collision detection process:**

- Devices transmitting simultaneously will result in a signal collision on the shared media.
- Devices detect the collision.
- Devices wait a random period of time and retransmit data.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

326

325

326

**Topologies****Contention-Based Access – CSMA/CA****CSMA/CA**

- Used by IEEE 802.11 WLANs.
- Operates in half-duplex mode where only one device sends or receives at a time.
- Uses a collision avoidance process to govern when a device can send and what happens if multiple devices send at the same time.

**CSMA/CA collision avoidance process:**

- When transmitting, devices also include the time duration needed for the transmission.
- Other devices on the shared medium receive the time duration information and know how long the medium will be unavailable.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

327

## 6.3 Data Link Frame



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

328

327

328

## Data Link Frame The Frame

Data is encapsulated by the data link layer with a header and a trailer to form a frame.

A data link frame has three parts:

- Header
- Data
- Trailer

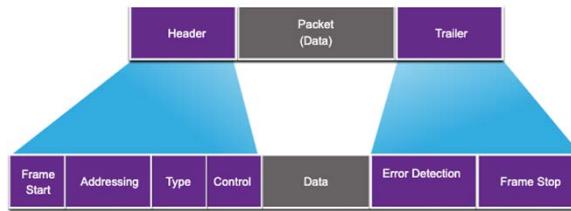
The fields of the header and trailer vary according to data link layer protocol.

The amount of control information carried with in the frame varies according to access control information and logical topology.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 329

## Data Link Frame Frame Fields



Field	Description
Frame Start and Stop	Identifies beginning and end of frame
Addressing	Indicates source and destination nodes
Type	Identifies encapsulated Layer 3 protocol
Control	Identifies flow control services
Data	Contains the frame payload
Error Detection	Used for determine transmission errors

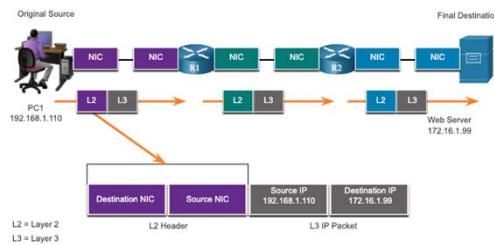
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 330

329

330

## Data Link Frame Layer 2 Addresses

- Also referred to as a physical address.
- Contained in the frame header.
- Used only for local delivery of a frame on the link.
- Updated by each device that forwards the frame.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 331

331

## Data Link Frame LAN and WAN Frames

The logical topology and physical media determine the data link protocol used:

- Ethernet
- 802.11 Wireless
- Point-to-Point (PPP)
- High-Level Data Link Control (HDLC)
- Frame-Relay

Each protocol performs media access control for specified logical topologies.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 332

332

## 6.4 Module Practice and Quiz

cisco

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 333

333

### Module Practice and Quiz

#### What did I learn in this module?

- The data link layer of the OSI model (Layer 2) prepares network data for the physical network.
- The data link layer is responsible for network interface card (NIC) to network interface card communications.
- The IEEE 802 LAN/MAN data link layer consists of the following two sublayers: LLC and MAC.
- The two types of topologies used in LAN and WAN networks are physical and logical.
- Three common types of physical WAN topologies are: point-to-point, hub and spoke, and mesh.
- Half-duplex communications exchange data in one direction at a time. Full-duplex sends and receives data simultaneously.
- In contention-based multi-access networks, all nodes are operating in half-duplex.
- Examples of contention-based access methods include: CSMA/CD for bus-topology Ethernet LANs and CSMA/CA for WLANs.
- The data link frame has three basic parts: header, data, and trailer.
- Frame fields include: frame start and stop indicator flags, addressing, type, control, data, and error detection.
- Data link addresses are also known as physical addresses.
- Data link addresses are only used for link local delivery of frames.

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 334

334

### Module 6: Data Link Layer

#### New Terms and Commands

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Logical Link Control (LLC)</li> <li>Media Access Control (MAC)</li> <li>Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE)</li> <li>International Telecommunications Union (ITU)</li> <li>International Organization for Standardization (ISO)</li> <li>American National Standards Institute (ANSI)</li> <li>Physical Topology</li> <li>Logical Topology</li> <li>Half-duplex</li> <li>Full-duplex</li> <li>CSMA/CD</li> <li>CSMA/CA</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC)</li> <li>Contention-based access</li> <li>Controlled access</li> </ul> |
|--|---|

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 335

335

## Module 7: Ethernet Switching

### Instructor Materials

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)



336

72

## What to Expect in this Module

- To facilitate learning, the following features within the GUI may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Animations	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Videos	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Check Your Understanding(CYU)	Per topic online quiz to help learners gauge content understanding.
Interactive Activities	A variety of formats to help learners gauge content understanding.
Syntax Checker	Small simulations that expose learners to Cisco command line to practice configuration skills.
PT Activity	Simulation and modeling activities designed to explore, acquire, reinforce, and expand skills.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

338

## What to Expect in this Module (Cont.)

- To facilitate learning, the following features may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Hands-On Labs	Labs designed for working with physical equipment.
Class Activities	These are found on the Instructor Resources page. Class Activities are designed to facilitate learning, class discussion, and collaboration.
Module Quizzes	Self-assessments that integrate concepts and skills learned throughout the series of topics presented in the module.
Module Summary	Briefly recaps module content.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

339

339



## Module 7: Ethernet Switching

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)



## Module Objectives

**Module Title:** Ethernet Switching

**Module Objective:** Explain how Ethernet works in a switched network.

Topic Title	Topic Objective
Ethernet Frame	Explain how the Ethernet sublayers are related to the frame fields.
Ethernet MAC Address	Describe the Ethernet MAC address.
The MAC Address Table	Explain how a switch builds its MAC address table and forwards frames.
Switch Speeds and Forwarding Methods	Describe switch forwarding methods and port settings available on Layer 2 switch ports.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

345

345

344

## 7.1 Ethernet Frames

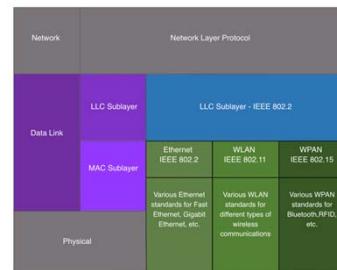
346

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 346

### Ethernet Frames Data Link Sublayers

The 802 LAN/MAN standards, including Ethernet, use two separate sublayers of the data link layer to operate:

- LLC Sublayer:** (IEEE 802.2) Places information in the frame to identify which network layer protocol is used for the frame.
- MAC Sublayer:** (IEEE 802.3, 802.11, or 802.15) Responsible for data encapsulation and media access control, and provides data link layer addressing.

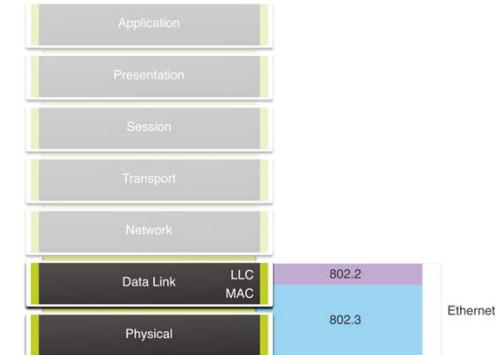


348

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 348

### Ethernet Frames Ethernet Encapsulation

- Ethernet operates in the data link layer and the physical layer.
- It is a family of networking technologies defined in the IEEE 802.2 and 802.3 standards.



347

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 347

### Ethernet Frames MAC Sublayer

The MAC sublayer is responsible for data encapsulation and accessing the media.

#### Data Encapsulation

IEEE 802.3 data encapsulation includes the following:

- Ethernet frame** - This is the internal structure of the Ethernet frame.
- Ethernet Addressing** - The Ethernet frame includes both a source and destination MAC address to deliver the Ethernet frame from Ethernet NIC to Ethernet NIC on the same LAN.
- Ethernet Error detection** - The Ethernet frame includes a frame check sequence (FCS) trailer used for error detection.

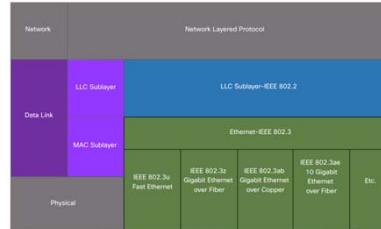
349

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 349

## Ethernet Frames MAC Sublayer

### Media Access

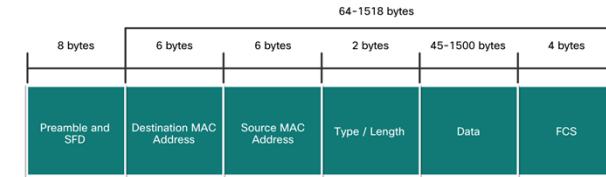
- The IEEE 802.3 MAC sublayer includes the specifications for different Ethernet communications standards over various types of media including copper and fiber.
- Legacy Ethernet using a bus topology or hubs, is a shared, half-duplex medium. Ethernet over a half-duplex medium uses a contention-based access method, carrier sense multiple access/collision detection (CSMA/CD).
- Ethernet LANs of today use switches that operate in full-duplex. Full-duplex communications with Ethernet switches do not require access control through CSMA/CD.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 350

## Ethernet Frames Ethernet Frame Fields

- The minimum Ethernet frame size is 64 bytes and the maximum is 1518 bytes. The preamble field is not included when describing the size of the frame.
- Any frame less than 64 bytes in length is considered a “collision fragment” or “runt frame” and is automatically discarded. Frames with more than 1500 bytes of data are considered “jumbo” or “baby giant frames”.
- If the size of a transmitted frame is less than the minimum, or greater than the maximum, the receiving device drops the frame. Dropped frames are likely to be the result of collisions or other unwanted signals. They are considered invalid. Jumbo frames are usually supported by most Fast Ethernet and Gigabit Ethernet switches and NICs.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 351

350

## Ethernet Frames Lab – Use Wireshark to Examine Ethernet Frames

In this lab, you will complete the following objectives:

- Part 1: Examine the Header Fields in an Ethernet II Frame
- Part 2: Use Wireshark to Capture and Analyze Ethernet Frames

352

## 7.2 Ethernet MAC Address

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 353

353

## Ethernet MAC Addresses

### MAC Address and Hexadecimal

- An Ethernet MAC address consists of a 48-bit binary value, expressed using 12 hexadecimal values.
- Given that 8 bits (one byte) is a common binary grouping, binary 00000000 to 11111111 can be represented in hexadecimal as the range 00 to FF,
- When using hexadecimal, leading zeroes are always displayed to complete the 8-bit representation. For example the binary value 0000 1010 is represented in hexadecimal as 0A.
- Hexadecimal numbers are often represented by the value preceded by **0x** (e.g., 0x73) to distinguish between decimal and hexadecimal values in documentation.
- Hexadecimal may also be represented by a subscript 16, or the hex number followed by an H (e.g., 73H).

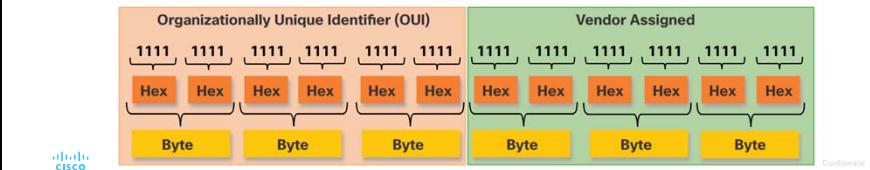
 CISCO

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 354

## Ethernet MAC Addresses

### Ethernet MAC Address

- In an Ethernet LAN, every network device is connected to the same, shared media. MAC addressing provides a method for device identification at the data link layer of the OSI model.
- An Ethernet MAC address is a 48-bit address expressed using 12 hexadecimal digits. Because a byte equals 8 bits, we can also say that a MAC address is 6 bytes in length.
- All MAC addresses must be unique to the Ethernet device or Ethernet interface. To ensure this, all vendors that sell Ethernet devices must register with the IEEE to obtain a unique 6 hexadecimal (i.e., 24-bit or 3-byte) code called the organizationally unique identifier (OUI).
- An Ethernet MAC address consists of a 6 hexadecimal vendor OUI code followed by a 6 hexadecimal vendor-assigned value.



Confidential 355

354

355

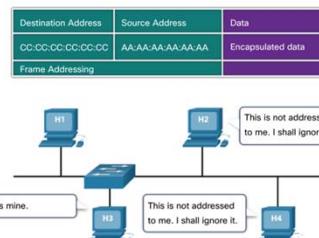
## Ethernet MAC Addresses

### Frame Processing

- When a device is forwarding a message to an Ethernet network, the Ethernet header include a Source MAC address and a Destination MAC address.
- When a NIC receives an Ethernet frame, it examines the destination MAC address to see if it matches the physical MAC address that is stored in RAM. If there is no match, the device discards the frame. If there is a match, it passes the frame up the OSI layers, where the de-encapsulation process takes place.

**Note:** Ethernet NICs will also accept frames if the destination MAC address is a broadcast or a multicast group of which the host is a member.

- Any device that is the source or destination of an Ethernet frame, will have an Ethernet NIC and therefore, a MAC address. This includes workstations, servers, printers, mobile devices, and routers.



 CISCO

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 356

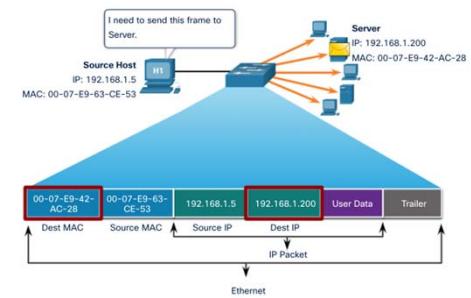
## Ethernet MAC Addresses

### Unicast MAC Address

In Ethernet, different MAC addresses are used for Layer 2 unicast, broadcast, and multicast communications.

- A unicast MAC address is the unique address that is used when a frame is sent from a single transmitting device to a single destination device.
- The process that a source host uses to determine the destination MAC address associated with an IPv4 address is known as Address Resolution Protocol (ARP). The process that a source host uses to determine the destination MAC address associated with an IPv6 address is known as Neighbor Discovery (ND).

**Note:** The source MAC address must always be a unicast.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 357

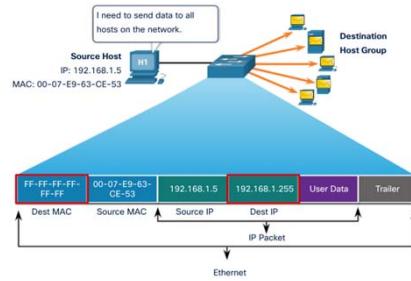
356

357

## Ethernet MAC Addresses Broadcast MAC Address

An Ethernet broadcast frame is received and processed by every device on the Ethernet LAN. The features of an Ethernet broadcast are as follows:

- It has a destination MAC address of FF-FF-FF-FF-FF-FF in hexadecimal (48 ones in binary).
- It is flooded out all Ethernet switch ports except the incoming port. It is not forwarded by a router.
- If the encapsulated data is an IPv4 broadcast packet, this means the packet contains a destination IPv4 address that has all ones (1s) in the host portion. This numbering in the address means that all hosts on that local network (broadcast domain) will receive and process the packet.

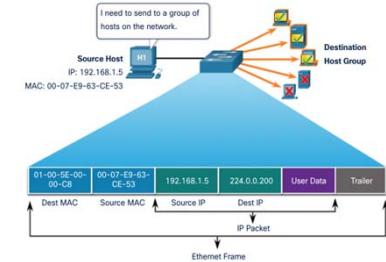


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 358

## Ethernet MAC Addresses Multicast MAC Address

An Ethernet multicast frame is received and processed by a group of devices that belong to the same multicast group.

- There is a destination MAC address of 01-00-5E when the encapsulated data is an IPv4 multicast packet and a destination MAC address of 33-33 when the encapsulated data is an IPv6 multicast packet.
- There are other reserved multicast destination MAC addresses for when the encapsulated data is not IP, such as Spanning Tree Protocol (STP).
- It is flooded out all Ethernet switch ports except the incoming port, unless the switch is configured for multicast snooping. It is not forwarded by a router, unless the router is configured to route multicast packets.
- Because multicast addresses represent a group of addresses (sometimes called a host group), they can only be used as the destination of a packet. The source will always be a unicast address.
- As with the unicast and broadcast addresses, the multicast IP address requires a corresponding multicast MAC address.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 359

358

359

## Ethernet MAC Addresses Lab – View Network Device MAC Addresses

In this lab, you will complete the following objectives:

- Part 1: Set Up the Topology and Initialize Devices
- Part 2: Configure Devices and Verify Connectivity
- Part 3: Display, Describe, and Analyze Ethernet MAC Addresses

CISCO

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 360

## 7.3 The MAC Address Table

CISCO

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 361

360

361

## The MAC Address Table Switch Fundamentals

- A Layer 2 Ethernet switch uses Layer 2 MAC addresses to make forwarding decisions. It is completely unaware of the data (protocol) being carried in the data portion of the frame, such as an IPv4 packet, an ARP message, or an IPv6 ND packet. The switch makes its forwarding decisions based solely on the Layer 2 Ethernet MAC addresses.
- An Ethernet switch examines its MAC address table to make a forwarding decision for each frame, unlike legacy Ethernet hubs that repeat bits out all ports except the incoming port.
- When a switch is turned on, the MAC address table is empty

**Note:** The MAC address table is sometimes referred to as a content addressable memory (CAM) table.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 362

362

## The MAC Address Table Switch Learning and Forwarding

### Examine the Source MAC Address (Learn)

Every frame that enters a switch is checked for new information to learn. It does this by examining the source MAC address of the frame and the port number where the frame entered the switch. If the source MAC address does not exist, it is added to the table along with the incoming port number. If the source MAC address does exist, the switch updates the refresh timer for that entry. By default, most Ethernet switches keep an entry in the table for 5 minutes.

**Note:** If the source MAC address does exist in the table but on a different port, the switch treats this as a new entry. The entry is replaced using the same MAC address but with the more current port number.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 363

363

## The MAC Address Table Switch Learning and Forwarding (Contd.)

### Find the Destination MAC Address (Forward)

If the destination MAC address is a unicast address, the switch will look for a match between the destination MAC address of the frame and an entry in its MAC address table. If the destination MAC address is in the table, it will forward the frame out the specified port. If the destination MAC address is not in the table, the switch will forward the frame out all ports except the incoming port. This is called an unknown unicast.

**Note:** If the destination MAC address is a broadcast or a multicast, the frame is also flooded out all ports except the incoming port.

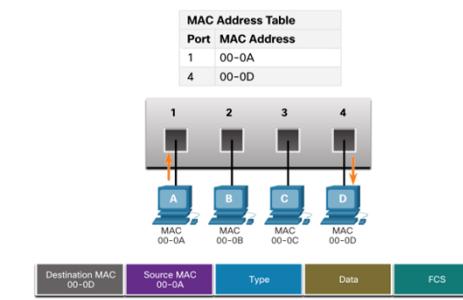


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 364

364

## The MAC Address Table Filtering Frames

As a switch receives frames from different devices, it is able to populate its MAC address table by examining the source MAC address of every frame. When the MAC address table of the switch contains the destination MAC address, it is able to filter the frame and forward out a single port.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 365

365

**The MAC Address Table****Video – MAC Address Tables on Connected Switches**

This video will cover the following:

- How switches build MAC address tables
- How switches forward frames base on the content of their MAC address tables



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 366

**The MAC Address Table****Video – Sending the Frame to the Default Gateway**

This video will cover the following:

- What a switch does when the destination MAC address is not listed in the switch's MAC address table.
- What a switch does when the source MAC address is not listed in the switch's MAC address table



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 367

366

367

**The MAC Address Table****Lab – View the Switch MAC Address Table**

In this lab, you will complete the following objectives:

- Part 1: Build and Configure the Network
- Part 2: Examine the Switch MAC Address Table



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 368

## 7.4 Switch Speeds and Forwarding Methods



© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 369

368

369

## Switch Speeds and Forwarding Methods

### Frame Forwarding Methods on Cisco Switches

Switches use one of the following forwarding methods for switching data between network ports:

- **Store-and-forward switching** - This frame forwarding method receives the entire frame and computes the CRC. If the CRC is valid, the switch looks up the destination address, which determines the outgoing interface. Then the frame is forwarded out of the correct port.
- **Cut-through switching** - This frame forwarding method forwards the frame before it is entirely received. At a minimum, the destination address of the frame must be read before the frame can be forwarded.
- A big advantage of store-and-forward switching is that it determines if a frame has errors before propagating the frame. When an error is detected in a frame, the switch discards the frame. Discarding frames with errors reduces the amount of bandwidth consumed by corrupt data.
- Store-and-forward switching is required for quality of service (QoS) analysis on converged networks where frame classification for traffic prioritization is necessary. For example, voice over IP (VoIP) data streams need to have priority over web-browsing traffic.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

370

## Switch Speeds and Forwarding Methods

### Cut-Through Switching

In cut-through switching, the switch acts upon the data as soon as it is received, even if the transmission is not complete. The switch buffers just enough of the frame to read the destination MAC address so that it can determine to which port it should forward out the data. The switch does not perform any error checking on the frame.

There are two variants of cut-through switching:

- **Fast-forward switching** - Offers the lowest level of latency by immediately forwarding a packet after reading the destination address. Because fast-forward switching starts forwarding before the entire packet has been received, there may be times when packets are relayed with errors. The destination NIC discards the faulty packet upon receipt. Fast-forward switching is the typical cut-through method of switching.
- **Fragment-free switching** - A compromise between the high latency and high integrity of store-and-forward switching and the low latency and reduced integrity of fast-forward switching, the switch stores and performs an error check on the first 64 bytes of the frame before forwarding. Because most network errors and collisions occur during the first 64 bytes, this ensures that a collision has not occurred before forwarding the frame.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

371

370

371

## Switch Speeds and Forwarding Methods

### Memory Buffering on Switches

An Ethernet switch may use a buffering technique to store frames before forwarding them or when the destination port is busy because of congestion.

Method	Description
Port-based memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Frames are stored in queues that are linked to specific incoming and outgoing ports.</li> <li>• A frame is transmitted to the outgoing port only when all the frames ahead in the queue have been successfully transmitted.</li> <li>• It is possible for a single frame to delay the transmission of all the frames in memory because of a busy destination port.</li> <li>• This delay occurs even if the other frames could be transmitted to open destination ports.</li> </ul>
Shared memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deposits all frames into a common memory buffer shared by all switch ports and the amount of buffer memory required by a port is dynamically allocated.</li> <li>• The frames in the buffer are dynamically linked to the destination port enabling a packet to be received on one port and then transmitted on another port, without moving it to a different queue.</li> </ul>

- Shared memory buffering also results in larger frames that can be transmitted with fewer dropped frames. This is important with asymmetric switching which allows for different data rates on different ports. Therefore, more bandwidth can be dedicated to certain ports (e.g., server port).



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

372

## Switch Speeds and Forwarding Methods

### Duplex and Speed Settings

Two of the most basic settings on a switch are the bandwidth ("speed") and duplex settings for each individual switch port. It is critical that the duplex and bandwidth settings match between the switch port and the connected devices.

There are two types of duplex settings used for communications on an Ethernet network:

- **Full-duplex** - Both ends of the connection can send and receive simultaneously.
- **Half-duplex** - Only one end of the connection can send at a time.

Autonegotiation is an optional function found on most Ethernet switches and NICs. It enables two devices to automatically negotiate the best speed and duplex capabilities.

**Note:** Gigabit Ethernet ports only operate in full-duplex.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

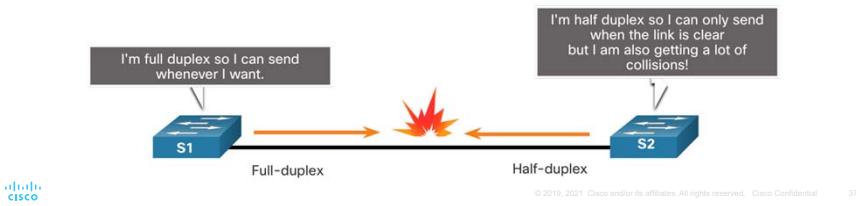
373

372

373

## Switch Speeds and Forwarding Methods Duplex and Speed Settings

- Duplex mismatch is one of the most common causes of performance issues on 10/100 Mbps Ethernet links. It occurs when one port on the link operates at half-duplex while the other port operates at full-duplex.
- This can occur when one or both ports on a link are reset, and the autonegotiation process does not result in both link partners having the same configuration.
- It also can occur when users reconfigure one side of a link and forget to reconfigure the other. Both sides of a link should have autonegotiation on, or both sides should have it off. Best practice is to configure both Ethernet switch ports as full-duplex.



## Switch Speeds and Forwarding Methods Auto-MDIX

Connections between devices once required the use of either a crossover or straight-through cable. The type of cable required depended on the type of interconnecting devices.

**Note:** A direct connection between a router and a host requires a cross-over connection.

- Most switch devices now support the automatic medium-dependent interface crossover (auto-MDIX) feature. When enabled, the switch automatically detects the type of cable attached to the port and configures the interfaces accordingly.
- The auto-MDIX feature is enabled by default on switches running Cisco IOS Release 12.2(18)SE or later. However, the feature could be disabled. For this reason, you should always use the correct cable type and not rely on the auto-MDIX feature.
- Auto-MDIX can be re-enabled using the **mdix auto** interface configuration command.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 375

374

375

## 7.5 Module Practice and Quiz

cisco

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 376

### Module Practice and Quiz

#### What did I learn in this module?

- Ethernet operates in the data link layer and the physical layer. Ethernet standards define both the Layer 2 protocols and the Layer 1 technologies.
- Ethernet uses the LLC and MAC sublayers of the data link layer to operate.
- The Ethernet frame fields are: preamble and start frame delimiter, destination MAC address, source MAC address, EtherType, data, and FCS.
- MAC addressing provides a method for device identification at the data link layer of the OSI model.
- An Ethernet MAC address is a 48-bit address expressed using 12 hexadecimal digits, or 6 bytes.
- When a device is forwarding a message to an Ethernet network, the Ethernet header includes the source and destination MAC addresses. In Ethernet, different MAC addresses are used for Layer 2 unicast, broadcast, and multicast communications.

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 377

376

377

**Module Practice and Quiz****What did I learn in this module? (Contd.)**

- A Layer 2 Ethernet switch makes its forwarding decisions based solely on the Layer 2 Ethernet MAC addresses.
- The switch dynamically builds the MAC address table by examining the source MAC address of the frames received on a port.
- The switch forwards frames by searching for a match between the destination MAC address in the frame and an entry in the MAC address table.
- Switches use one of the following forwarding methods for switching data between network ports: store-and-forward switching or cut-through switching. Two variants of cut-through switching are fast-forward and fragment-free.
- Two methods of memory buffering are port-based memory and shared memory.
- There are two types of duplex settings used for communications on an Ethernet network: full-duplex and half-duplex.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

378

**Module 7: Ethernet Switching****New Terms and Commands**

- Store-and-Forward Switching
- Cut-through Switching
- Fast-Forward Switching
- Fragment-free Switching
- OUI (Organizationally Unique Identifier)
- ARP (Address Resolution Protocol)
- ND (Neighbor Discovery)
- Port-based memory
- Shared memory
- Auto-MDIX



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

379

378

379

**Module 8: Network Layer**

Instructor Materials

Introduction to Networks v7.0 (ITN)

380

**What to Expect in this Module**

- To facilitate learning, the following features within the GUI may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Animations	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Videos	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Check Your Understanding(CYU)	Per topic online quiz to help learners gauge content understanding.
Interactive Activities	A variety of formats to help learners gauge content understanding.
Syntax Checker	Small simulations that expose learners to Cisco command line to practice configuration skills.
PT Activity	Simulation and modeling activities designed to explore, acquire, reinforce, and expand skills.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

382

382

## What to Expect in this Module (Cont.)

- To facilitate learning, the following features may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Hands-On Labs	Labs designed for working with physical equipment.
Class Activities	These are found on the Instructor Resources page. Class Activities are designed to facilitate learning, class discussion, and collaboration.
Module Quizzes	Self-assessments that integrate concepts and skills learned throughout the series of topics presented in the module.
Module Summary	Briefly recaps module content.

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 383

383



389

## Module 8: Topics

What will I learn to do in this module?

Topic Title	Topic Objective
Network Layer Characteristics	Explain how the network layer uses IP protocols for reliable communications.
IPv4 Packet	Explain the role of the major header fields in the IPv4 packet.
IPv6 Packet	Explain the role of the major header fields in the IPv6 packet.
How a Host Routes	Explain how network devices use routing tables to direct packets to a destination network.
Router Routing Tables	Explain the function of fields in the routing table of a router.

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 390

390

## 8.1 Network Layer Characteristics

Cisco

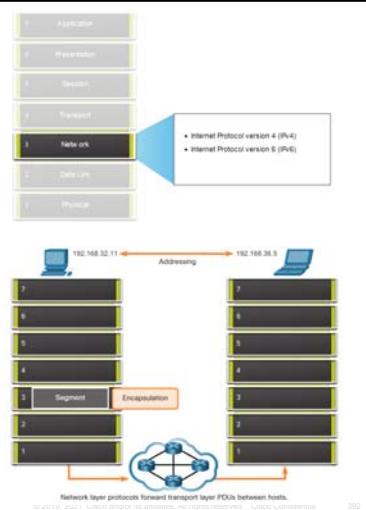
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 391

391

## Network Layer Characteristics

### The Network Layer

- Provides services to allow end devices to exchange data
- IP version 4 (IPv4) and IP version 6 (IPv6) are the principle network layer communication protocols.
- The network layer performs four basic operations:
  - Addressing end devices
  - Encapsulation
  - Routing
  - De-encapsulation

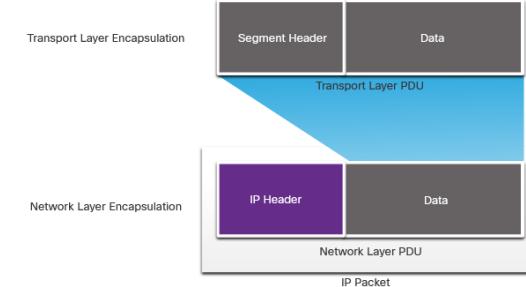


## Network Layer Characteristics

### IP Encapsulation

- IP encapsulates the transport layer segment.
- IP can use either an IPv4 or IPv6 packet and not impact the layer 4 segment.
- IP packet will be examined by all layer 3 devices as it traverses the network.
- The IP addressing does not change from source to destination.

**Note:** NAT will change addressing, but will be discussed in a later module.



392

393

## Network Layer Characteristics

### Characteristics of IP

IP is meant to have low overhead and may be described as:

- Connectionless
- Best Effort
- Media Independent



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 394

## Network Layer Characteristics

### Connectionless

- IP is Connectionless
- IP does not establish a connection with the destination before sending the packet.
  - There is no control information needed (synchronizations, acknowledgments, etc.).
  - The destination will receive the packet when it arrives, but no pre-notifications are sent by IP.
  - If there is a need for connection-oriented traffic, then another protocol will handle this (typically TCP at the transport layer).



A letter is sent.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 395

394

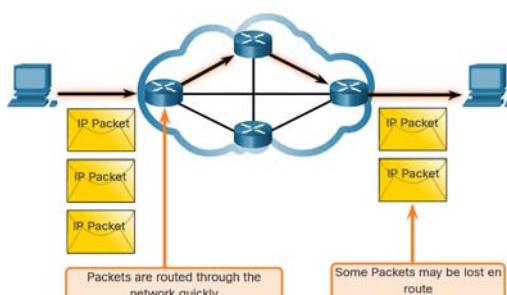
395

## Network Layer Characteristics

### Best Effort

#### IP is Best Effort

- IP will not guarantee delivery of the packet.
- IP has reduced overhead since there is no mechanism to resend data that is not received.
- IP does not expect acknowledgments.
- IP does not know if the other device is operational or if it received the packet.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 396

## Network Layer Characteristics

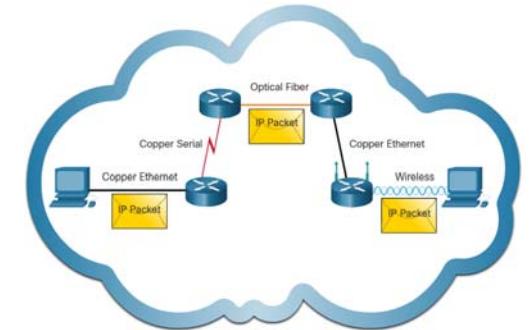
### Media Independent

#### IP is unreliable:

- It cannot manage or fix undelivered or corrupt packets.
- IP cannot retransmit after an error.
- IP cannot realign out of sequence packets.
- IP must rely on other protocols for these functions.

#### IP is media Independent:

- IP does not concern itself with the type of frame required at the data link layer or the media type at the physical layer.
- IP can be sent over any media type: copper, fiber, or wireless.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 397

396

## Network Layer Characteristics

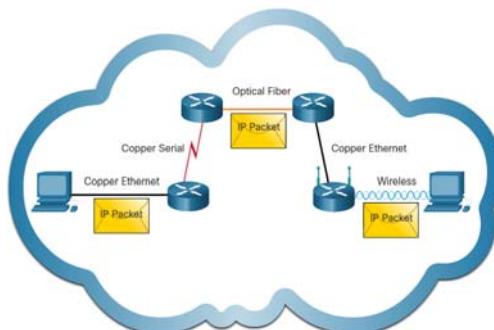
### Media Independent (Contd.)

The network layer will establish the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU).

- Network layer receives this from control information sent by the data link layer.
- The network then establishes the MTU size.

Fragmentation is when Layer 3 splits the IPv4 packet into smaller units.

- Fragmenting causes latency.
- IPv6 does not fragment packets.
- Example: Router goes from Ethernet to a slow WAN with a smaller MTU



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 398

## 8.2 IPv4 Packet

398

399

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 399

## IPv4 Packet

### IPv4 Packet Header

IPv4 is the primary communication protocol for the network layer.

The network header has many purposes:

- It ensures the packet is sent in the correct direction (to the destination).
- It contains information for network layer processing in various fields.
- The information in the header is used by all layer 3 devices that handle the packet



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 400

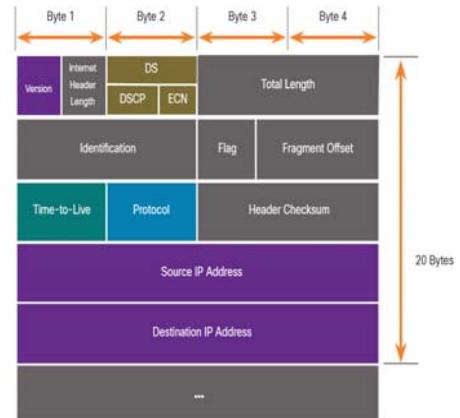
## IPv4 Packet

### IPv4 Packet Header Fields

The IPv4 network header characteristics:

- It is in binary.
- Contains several fields of information
- Diagram is read from left to right, 4 bytes per line
- The two most important fields are the source and destination.

Protocols may have one or more functions.



401

400

## IPv4 Packet

### IPv4 Packet Header Fields

Significant fields in the IPv4 header:

Function	Description
Version	This will be for v4, as opposed to v6, a 4 bit field= 0100
Differentiated Services	Used for QoS: DiffServ – DS field or the older IntServ – ToS or Type of Service
Header Checksum	Detect corruption in the IPv4 header
Time to Live (TTL)	Layer 3 hop count. When it becomes zero the router will discard the packet.
Protocol	I.D.s next level protocol: ICMP, TCP, UDP, etc.
Source IPv4 Address	32 bit source address
Destination IPV4 Address	32 bit destination address



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 402

## IPv4 Packet

### Video – Sample IPv4 Headers in Wireshark

This video will cover the following:

- IPv4 Ethernet packets in Wireshark
- The control information
- The difference between packets



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 403

403

402

## 8.3 IPv6 Packets

404

### IPv6 Packets

#### Limitations of IPv4

IPv4 has three major limitations:

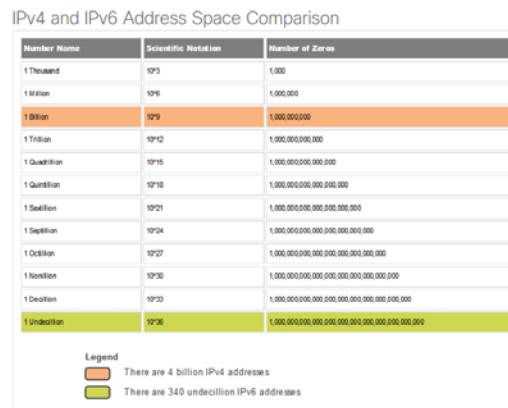
- IPv4 address depletion – We have basically run out of IPv4 addressing.
- Lack of end-to-end connectivity – To make IPv4 survive this long, private addressing and NAT were created. This ended direct communications with public addressing.
- Increased network complexity – NAT was meant as temporary solution and creates issues on the network as a side effect of manipulating the network headers addressing. NAT causes latency and troubleshooting issues.

405

### IPv6 Packets

#### IPv6 Overview

- IPv6 was developed by Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF).
- IPv6 overcomes the limitations of IPv4.
- Improvements that IPv6 provides:
  - **Increased address space** – based on 128 bit address, not 32 bits
  - **Improved packet handling** – simplified header with fewer fields
  - **Eliminates the need for NAT** – since there is a huge amount of addressing, there is no need to use private addressing internally and be mapped to a shared public address



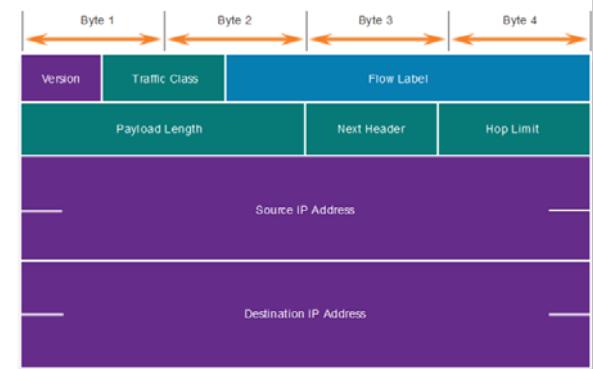
406

407

### IPv6 Packets

#### IPv4 Packet Header Fields in the IPv6 Packet Header

- The IPv6 header is simplified, but not smaller.
- The header is fixed at 40 Bytes or octets long.
- Several IPv4 fields were removed to improve performance.
- Some IPv4 fields were removed to improve performance:
  - Flag
  - Fragment Offset
  - Header Checksum



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 407

## IPv6 Packets

## IPv6 Packet Header

Significant fields in the IPv6 header:

Function	Description
Version	This will be for v6, as opposed to v4, a 4 bit field= 0110
Traffic Class	Used for QoS: Equivalent to DiffServ – DS field
Flow Label	Informs device to handle identical flow labels the same way, 20 bit field
Payload Length	This 16-bit field indicates the length of the data portion or payload of the IPv6 packet
Next Header	I.D.s next level protocol: ICMP, TCP, UDP, etc.
Hop Limit	Replaces TTL field Layer 3 hop count
Source IPv6 Address	128 bit source address
Destination IPV6 Address	128 bit destination address

CISCO

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

408

## IPv6 Packets

## IPv6 Packet Header (Cont.)

IPv6 packet may also contain extension headers (EH).

EH headers characteristics:

- provide optional network layer information
- are optional
- are placed between IPv6 header and the payload
- may be used for fragmentation, security, mobility support, etc.

**Note:** Unlike IPv4, routers do not fragment IPv6 packets.

CISCO

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

409

409

## IPv6 Packets

## Video – Sample IPv6 Headers in Wireshark

This video will cover the following:

- IPv6 Ethernet packets in Wireshark
- The control information
- The difference between packets

CISCO

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

410

CISCO

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

411

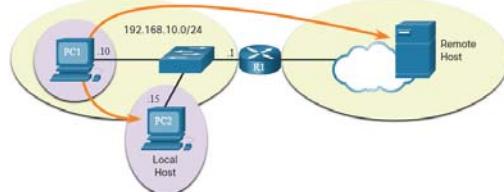
411

## 8.4 How a Host Routes

## How a Host Routes

### Host Forwarding Decision

- Packets are always created at the source.
- Each host device creates their own routing table.
- A host can send packets to the following:
  - Itself – 127.0.0.1 (IPv4), ::1 (IPv6)
  - Local Hosts – destination is on the same LAN
  - Remote Hosts – devices are not on the same LAN



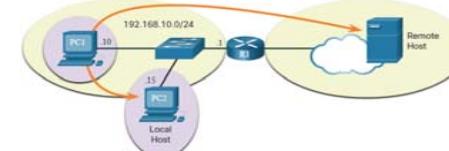
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

412

## How a Host Routes

### Host Forwarding Decision (Cont.)

- The Source device determines whether the destination is local or remote
- Method of determination:
  - IPv4 – Source uses its own IP address and Subnet mask, along with the destination IP address
  - IPv6 – Source uses the network address and prefix advertised by the local router
- Local traffic is dumped out the host interface to be handled by an intermediary device.
- Remote traffic is forwarded directly to the default gateway on the LAN.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

413

412

## How a Host Routes

### Default Gateway

A router or layer 3 switch can be a default-gateway.

Features of a default gateway (DGW):

- It must have an IP address in the same range as the rest of the LAN.
- It can accept data from the LAN and is capable of forwarding traffic off of the LAN.
- It can route to other networks.

If a device has no default gateway or a bad default gateway, its traffic will not be able to leave the LAN.

Cisco

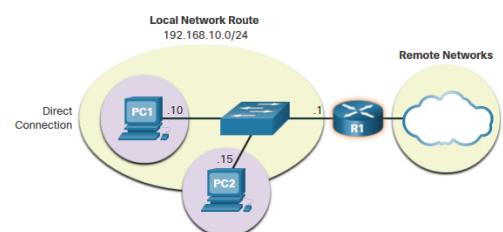
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

414

## How a Host Routes

### A Host Routes to the Default Gateway

- The host will know the default gateway (DGW) either statically or through DHCP in IPv4.
- IPv6 sends the DGW through a router solicitation (RS) or can be configured manually.
- A DGW is static route which will be a last resort route in the routing table.
- All device on the LAN will need the DGW of the router if they intend to send traffic remotely.



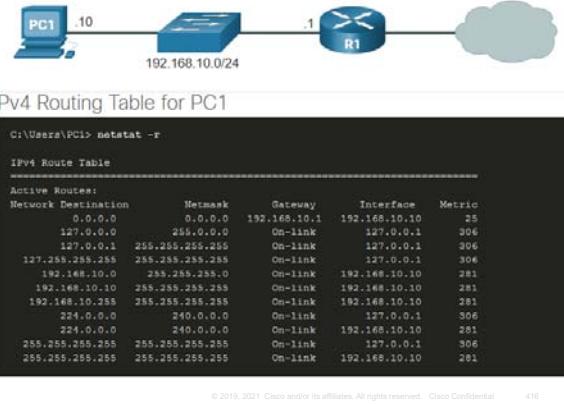
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

415

415

## How a Host Routes Host Routing Tables

- On Windows, route print or netstat -r to display the PC routing table
- Three sections displayed by these two commands:
  - Interface List – all potential interfaces and MAC addressing
  - IPv4 Routing Table
  - IPv6 Routing Table



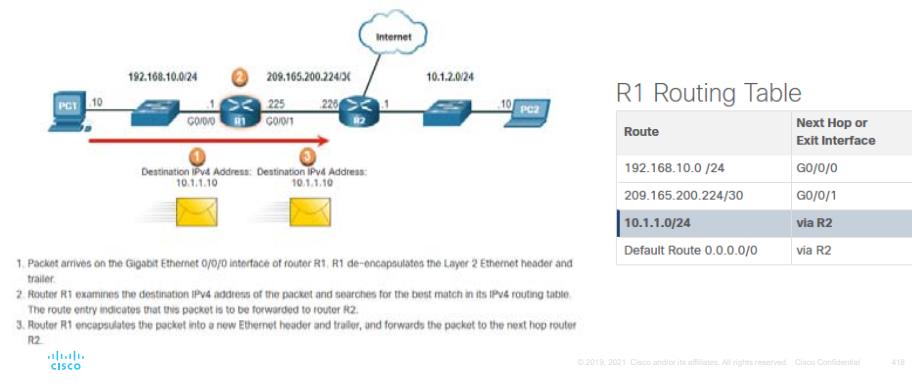
416

## 8.5 Introduction to Routing

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 417

## Introduction to Routing Router Packet Forwarding Decision

What happens when the router receives the frame from the host device?



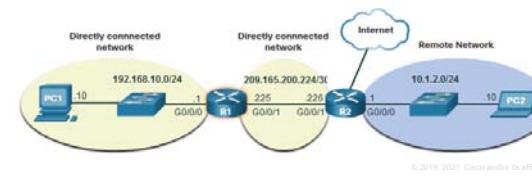
418

419

## Introduction to Routing IP Router Routing Table

There are three types of routes in a router's routing table:

- Directly Connected** – These routes are automatically added by the router, provided the interface is active and has addressing.
- Remote** – These are the routes the router does not have a direct connection and may be learned:
  - Manually – with a static route
  - Dynamically – by using a routing protocol to have the routers share their information with each other
- Default Route** – this forwards all traffic to a specific direction when there is not a match in the routing table

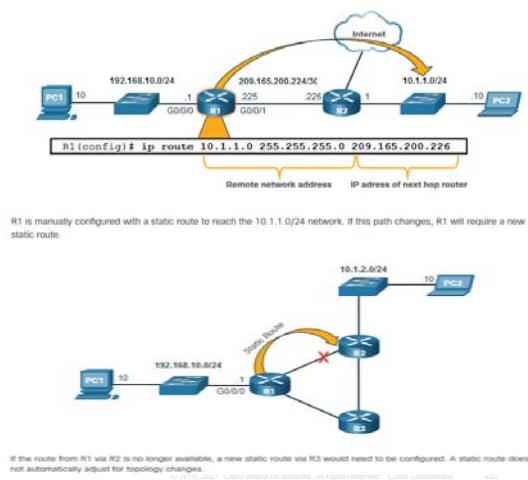


© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 419

## Introduction to Routing Static Routing

### Static Route Characteristics:

- Must be configured manually
- Must be adjusted manually by the administrator when there is a change in the topology
- Good for small non-redundant networks
- Often used in conjunction with a dynamic routing protocol for configuring a default route



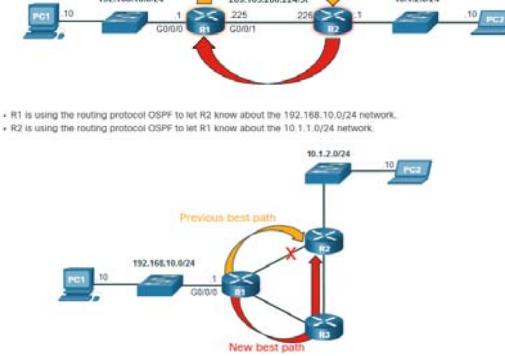
420

## Introduction to Routing Dynamic Routing

### Dynamic Routes Automatically:

- Discover remote networks
- Maintain up-to-date information
- Choose the best path to the destination
- Find new best paths when there is a topology change

Dynamic routing can also share static default routes with the other routers.



421

## Introduction to Routing Video – IPv4 Router Routing Tables

This video will explain the information in the IPv4 router routing table.

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

422

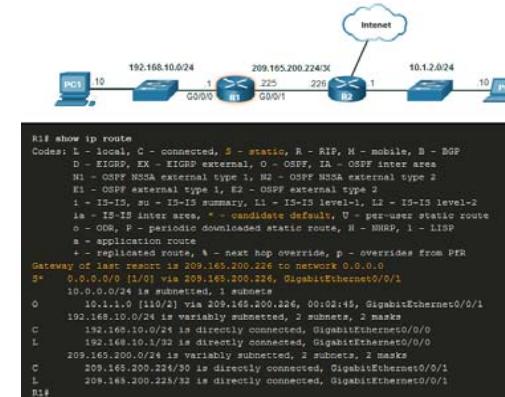
## Introduction to Routing Introduction to an IPv4 Routing Table

The **show ip route** command shows the following route sources:

- **L** - Directly connected local interface IP address
- **C** - Directly connected network
- **S** - Static route was manually configured by an administrator
- **O** - OSPF
- **D** - EIGRP

This command shows types of routes:

- Directly Connected – C and L
- Remote Routes – O, D, etc.
- Default Routes – S\*



423

## 8.6 Module Practice and Quiz

424

### Module Practice and Quiz

#### What did I learn in this module?

- IP is connectionless, best effort, and media independent.
- IP does not guarantee packet delivery.
- IPv4 packet header consists of fields containing information about the packet.
- IPv6 overcomes IPv4 lack of end-to-end connectivity and increased network complexity.
- A device will determine if a destination is itself, another local host, and a remote host.
- A default gateway is router that is part of the LAN and will be used as a door to other networks.
- The routing table contains a list of all known network addresses (prefixes) and where to forward the packet.
- The router uses longest subnet mask or prefix match.
- The routing table has three types of route entries: directly connected networks, remote networks, and a default route.

425

© 2016, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 425

### Network Layer New Terms and Commands

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Encapsulation</li> <li>• Routing</li> <li>• De-encapsulation</li> <li>• Data payload</li> <li>• Packet</li> <li>• Internet Protocol Version 4 (IPv4)</li> <li>• Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6)</li> <li>• Network Layer PDU = IP Packet</li> <li>• IP Header</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Best effort delivery</li> <li>• Media independent</li> <li>• Connectionless</li> <li>• Unreliable</li> <li>• Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU)</li> <li>• Version</li> <li>• Differentiated Services (DS)</li> <li>• Time-to-Live (TTL)</li> <li>• Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP)</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identification, Flags, Fragment Offset fields</li> <li>• Network Address Translation (NAT)</li> <li>• Traffic Class</li> <li>• Flow Label</li> <li>• Payload Length</li> <li>• Next Header</li> <li>• Hop Limit</li> <li>• Extension Headers</li> <li>• Local host</li> <li>• Remote host</li> <li>• Default Gateway</li> </ul> |
|--|---|--|

© 2016, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 426

### Network Layer New Terms and Commands

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• netstat -r</li> <li>• route print</li> <li>• interface list</li> <li>• IPv4 Route Table</li> <li>• IPv6 Route Table</li> <li>• directly-connected routes</li> <li>• remote routes</li> <li>• default route</li> <li>• <b>show ip route</b></li> <li>• route source</li> <li>• destination network</li> <li>• outgoing interface</li> <li>• administrative distance</li> <li>• metric</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• next-hop</li> <li>• route timestamp</li> </ul> |
|--|---|

© 2016, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 427

426

427



**Module 9: Address Resolution**

Instructor Materials

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)



428

## What to Expect in this Module

- To facilitate learning, the following features within the GUI may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Animations	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Videos	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Check Your Understanding(CYU)	Per topic online quiz to help learners gauge content understanding.
Interactive Activities	A variety of formats to help learners gauge content understanding.
Syntax Checker	Small simulations that expose learners to Cisco command line to practice configuration skills.
PT Activity	Simulation and modeling activities designed to explore, acquire, reinforce, and expand skills.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 430

430

## What to Expect in this Module (Cont.)

- To facilitate learning, the following features may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Hands-On Labs	Labs designed for working with physical equipment.
Class Activities	These are found on the Instructor Resources page. Class Activities are designed to facilitate learning, class discussion, and collaboration.
Module Quizzes	Self-assessments that integrate concepts and skills learned throughout the series of topics presented in the module.
Module Summary	Briefly recaps module content.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 431

431



**Module 9: Address Resolution**

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)



436

## Module Objectives

**Module Title:** Address Resolution

**Module Objective:** Explain how ARP and ND enable communication on a network.

Topic Title	Topic Objective
MAC and IP	Compare the roles of the MAC address and the IP address.
ARP	Describe the purpose of ARP.
Neighbor Discovery	Describe the operation of IPv6 neighbor discovery.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 437

## 9.1 MAC and IP



© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 438

437

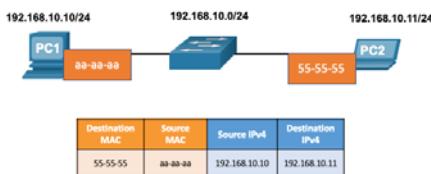
438

### MAC and IP Destination on Same Network

There are two primary addresses assigned to a device on an Ethernet LAN:

- **Layer 2 physical address (the MAC address)** – Used for NIC to NIC communications on the same Ethernet network.
- **Layer 3 logical address (the IP address)** – Used to send the packet from the source device to the destination device.

Layer 2 addresses are used to deliver frames from one NIC to another NIC on the same network. If a destination IP address is on the same network, the destination MAC address will be that of the destination device.

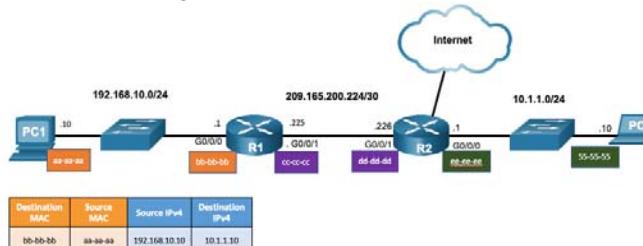


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 439

### MAC and IP Destination on Remote Network

When the destination IP address is on a remote network, the destination MAC address is that of the default gateway.

- ARP is used by IPv4 to associate the IPv4 address of a device with the MAC address of the device NIC.
- ICMPv6 is used by IPv6 to associate the IPv6 address of a device with the MAC address of the device NIC.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 440

439

440

## MAC and IP Packet Tracer – Identify MAC and IP Addresses

In this Packet Tracer, you will complete the following objectives:

- Gather PDU Information for Local Network Communication
- Gather PDU Information for Remote Network Communication

 Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 441

## 9.2 ARP

 Cisco

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 442

441

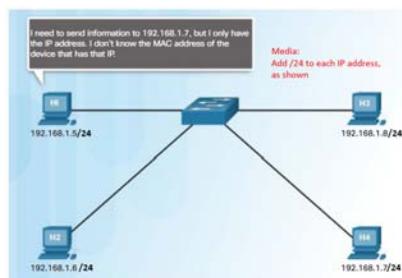
442

## ARP ARP Overview

A device uses ARP to determine the destination MAC address of a local device when it knows its IPv4 address.

ARP provides two basic functions:

- Resolving IPv4 addresses to MAC addresses
- Maintaining an ARP table of IPv4 to MAC address mappings



 Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 443

## ARP ARP Functions

To send a frame, a device will search its ARP table for a destination IPv4 address and a corresponding MAC address.

- If the packet's destination IPv4 address is on the same network, the device will search the ARP table for the destination IPv4 address.
- If the destination IPv4 address is on a different network, the device will search the ARP table for the IPv4 address of the default gateway.
- If the device locates the IPv4 address, its corresponding MAC address is used as the destination MAC address in the frame.
- If there is no ARP table entry is found, then the device sends an ARP request.

 Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 444

443

444

## ARP Video - ARP Request

This video will cover an ARP request for a MAC address.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 445

## ARP Video – ARP Operation - ARP Reply

This video will cover an ARP reply in response to an ARP request.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 446

445

446

## ARP Video - ARP Role in Remote Communications

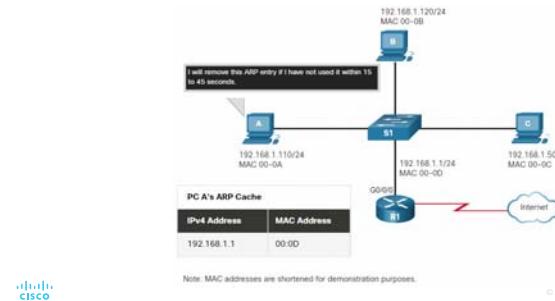
This video will cover how an ARP request will provide a host the MAC address of the default gateway.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 447

## ARP Removing Entries from an ARP Table

- Entries in the ARP table are not permanent and are removed when an ARP cache timer expires after a specified period of time.
- The duration of the ARP cache timer differs depending on the operating system.
- ARP table entries can also be removed manually by the administrator.



447

448

## ARP ARP Tables on Networking Devices

- The `show ip arp` command displays the ARP table on a Cisco router.
- The `arp -a` command displays the ARP table on a Windows 10 PC.

```
R1# show ip arp
Protocol Address      Age (min)  Hardware Addr  Type    Interface
Internet 192.168.10.1          -  a0e0.af0d.e140  ARPA   GigabitEthernet0/0/0
```

```
C:\Users\PC> arp -a
Interface: 192.168.1.124 --- 0x10
Internet Address      Physical Address      Type
 192.168.1.1           c8-d7-19-cc-a0-86  dynamic
 192.168.1.101         08-3e-0c-f5-f7-77  dynamic
```

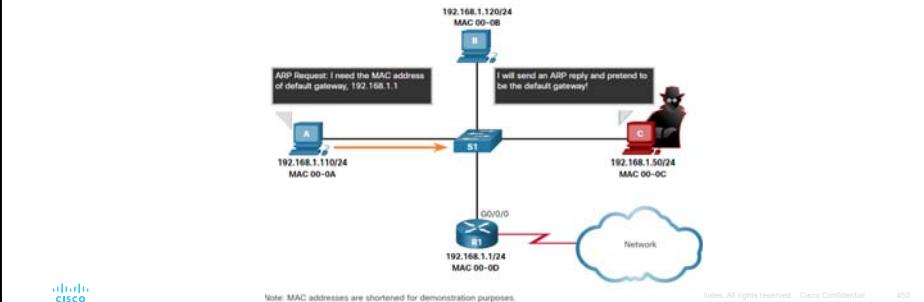
cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

449

## ARP ARP Issues – ARP Broadcasting and ARP Spoofing

- ARP requests are received and processed by every device on the local network.
- Excessive ARP broadcasts can cause some reduction in performance.
- ARP replies can be spoofed by a threat actor to perform an ARP poisoning attack.
- Enterprise level switches include mitigation techniques to protect against ARP attacks.



cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

450

## ARP Packet Tracer – Examine the ARP Table

In this Packet Tracer, you will complete the following objectives:

- Examine an ARP Request
- Examine a Switch MAC Address Table
- Examine the ARP Process in Remote Communications

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

451

## 9.3 IPv6 Neighbor Discovery

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

452

451

452

## IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Video – IPv6 Neighbor Discovery

This video will explain the process of how IPv6 performs address resolution using ICMPv6 neighbor solicitation and neighbor advertisement messages.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 453

## IPv6 Neighbor Discovery IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Messages

IPv6 Neighbor Discovery (ND) protocol provides:

- Address resolution
- Router discovery
- Redirection services
- ICMPv6 Neighbor Solicitation (NS) and Neighbor Advertisement (NA) messages are used for device-to-device messaging such as address resolution.
- ICMPv6 Router Solicitation (RS) and Router Advertisement (RA) messages are used for messaging between devices and routers for router discovery.
- ICMPv6 redirect messages are used by routers for better next-hop selection.

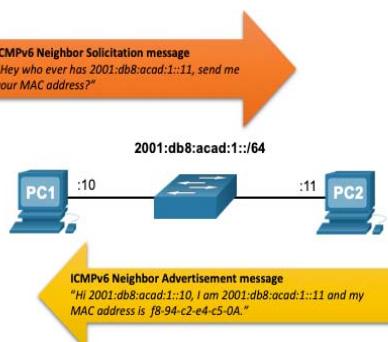


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 454

453

454

## IPv6 Neighbor Discovery IPv6 Neighbor Discovery – Address Resolution



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 455

- IPv6 devices use ND to resolve the MAC address of a known IPv6 address.
- ICMPv6 Neighbor Solicitation messages are sent using special Ethernet and IPv6 multicast addresses.

## IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Packet Tracer – IPv6 Neighbor Discovery

In this Packet Tracer, you will complete the following objectives:

- Part 1: IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Local Network
- Part 2: IPv6 Neighbor discovery Remote Network



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 456

455

456

## 9.4 Module Practice and Quiz

Cisco

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 457

457

### Module Practice and Quiz

#### What did I learn in this module?

- Layer 2 physical addresses (i.e., Ethernet MAC addresses) are used to deliver the data link frame with the encapsulated IP packet from one NIC to another NIC on the same network.
- If the destination IP address is on the same network, the destination MAC address will be that of the destination device.
- When the destination IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) is on a remote network, the destination MAC address will be the address of the host default gateway (i.e., the router interface).
- An IPv4 device uses ARP to determine the destination MAC address of a local device when it knows its IPv4 address.
- ARP provides two basic functions: resolving IPv4 addresses to MAC addresses and maintaining a table of IPv4 to MAC address mappings.
- After the ARP reply is received, the device will add the IPv4 address and the corresponding MAC address to its ARP table.
- For each device, an ARP cache timer removes ARP entries that have not been used for a specified period of time.
- IPv6 does not use ARP, it uses the ND protocol to resolve MAC addresses.
- An IPv6 device uses ICMPv6 Neighbor Discovery to determine the destination MAC address of a local device when it knows its IPv6 address.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 458

458

### Module 9: Address Resolution

#### New Terms and Commands

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)</li> <li>• ARP table</li> <li>• show ip arp</li> <li>• arpr -a</li> <li>• ICMPv6 Neighbor Discovery protocol (ND)</li> <li>• ICMPv6 Neighbor Solicitation (NS) message</li> <li>• ICMPv6 Neighbor Advertisement (NA) message</li> <li>• ICMPv6 Router Solicitation (RS) message</li> <li>• ICMPv6 Router Advertisement (RA) message</li> <li>• ICMPv6 Redirect Message</li> </ul> |  |
|--|--|

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 459

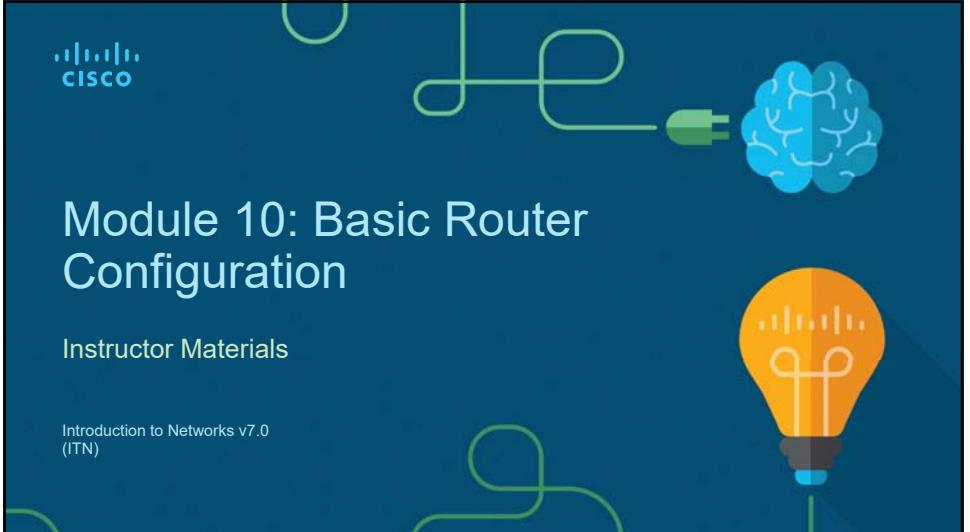
459

### Instructor Materials

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)

460

## Module 10: Basic Router Configuration





**Module 10: Basic Router Configuration**

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)



469

## Module Objectives

**Module Title:** Basic Router Configuration

**Module Objective:** Implement initial settings on a router and end devices.

Topic Title	Topic Objective
Configure Initial Router Settings	Configure initial settings on an IOS Cisco router.
Configure Interfaces	Configure two active interfaces on a Cisco IOS router.
Configure the Default Gateway	Configure devices to use the default gateway.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 470

470

## 10.1 Configure Initial Router Settings

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 471



471

### Configure Initial Router Settings Basic Router Configuration Steps

- Configure the device name.
- Secure privileged EXEC mode.
- Secure user EXEC mode.
- Secure remote Telnet / SSH access.
- Encrypt all plaintext passwords.
- Provide legal notification and save the configuration.

```
Router(config)# hostname hostname
Router(config)# enable secret password
Router(config)# line console 0
Router(config-line)# password password
Router(config-line)# login
Router(config)# line vty 0 4
Router(config-line)# password password
Router(config-line)# login
Router(config-line)# transport input {ssh | telnet}
Router(config)# service password encryption
Router(config)# banner motd # message #
Router(config)# end
Router# copy running-config startup-config
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 472

472

## Configure Initial Router Settings

**Basic Router Configuration Example**

- Commands for basic router configuration on R1.
- Configuration is saved to NVRAM.

```
R1(config)# hostname R1
R1(config)# enable secret class
R1(config)# line console 0
R1(config-line)# password cisco
R1(config-line)# login
R1(config-line)# line vty 0 4
R1(config-line)# password cisco
R1(config-line)# login
R1(config-line)# transport input ssh telnet
R1(config-line)# exit
R1(config)# service password encryption
R1(config)# banner motd #
Enter TEXT message. End with a new line and the #
*****
WARNING: Unauthorized access is prohibited!
*****
R1(config)# exit
R1# copy running-config startup-config
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

473

## Configure Initial Router Settings

**Packet Tracer – Configure Initial Router Settings**

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Verify the default router configuration.
- Configure and verify the initial router configuration.
- Save the running configuration file.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

474

473

474

## 10.2 Configure Interfaces



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

475

## Configure Interfaces

**Configure Router Interfaces**

Configuring a router interface includes issuing the following commands:

```
Router(config)# interface type-and-number
Router(config-if)# description description-text
Router(config-if)# ip address ipv4-address subnet-mask
Router(config-if)# ipv6 address ipv6-address/prefix-length
Router(config-if)# no shutdown
```

- It is a good practice to use the **description** command to add information about the network connected to the interface.
- The **no shutdown** command activates the interface.



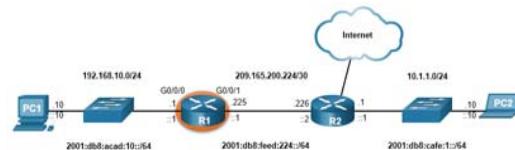
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

476

476

**Configure Interfaces****Configure Router Interfaces Example**

The commands to configure interface G0/0/0 on R1 are shown here:



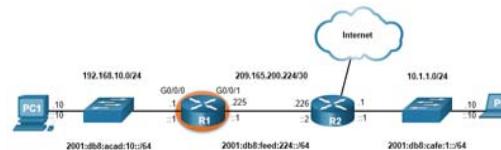
```
R1(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0
R1(config-if)# description Link to LAN
R1(config-if)# ip address 192.168.10.1 255.255.255.0
R1(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:db8:acad:10::1/64
R1(config-if)# no shutdown
R1(config-if)# exit
R1(config)#
*Aug 1 01:43:53.435: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0, changed state to down
*Aug 1 01:43:56.447: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0, changed state to up
*Aug 1 01:43:57.447: %LINEPROTO-5-UPDOWN: Line protocol on Interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0, changed state to up
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 477

**Configure Interfaces****Configure Router Interfaces Example (Cont.)**

The commands to configure interface G0/0/1 on R1 are shown here:



```
R1(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/1
R1(config-if)# description Link to R2
R1(config-if)# ip address 209.165.200.225 255.255.255.252
R1(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:db8:feed:224::1/64
R1(config-if)# no shutdown
R1(config-if)# exit
R1(config)#
*Aug 1 01:45:29.170: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface GigabitEthernet0/0/1, changed state to down
*Aug 1 01:46:32.171: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface GigabitEthernet0/0/1, changed state to up
*Aug 1 01:46:33.171: %LINEPROTO-5-UPDOWN: Line protocol on Interface GigabitEthernet0/0/1, changed state to up
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 478

477

478

**Configure Interfaces****Verify Interface Configuration**

To verify interface configuration use the **show ip interface brief** and **show ipv6 interface brief** commands shown here:

```
R1# show ip interface brief
Interface          IP-Address      OK? Method Status           Protocol
GigabitEthernet0/0/0 192.168.10.1   YES manual up            up
GigabitEthernet0/0/1 209.165.200.225 YES manual up            up
Vlan1              unassigned       YES unset administratively down down

R1# show ipv6 interface brief
GigabitEthernet0/0/0 [up/up]
  FE80::201:9FF:FE89:4501
  2001:DB8:ACAD:10::1
GigabitEthernet0/0/1 [up/up]
  FE80::201:9FF:FE89:4502
  2001:DB8:FEED:224::1
Vlan1              unassigned       (administratively down/down)
R1#
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 479

479

**Configure Interfaces****Configure Verification Commands**

Commands	Description
<b>show ip interface brief</b> <b>show ipv6 interface brief</b>	Displays all interfaces, their IP addresses, and their current status.
<b>show ip route</b> <b>show ipv6 route</b>	Displays the contents of the IP routing tables stored in RAM.
<b>show interfaces</b>	Displays statistics for all interfaces on the device. Only displays the IPv4 addressing information.
<b>show ip interfaces</b>	Displays the IPv4 statistics for all interfaces on a router.
<b>show ipv6 interfaces</b>	Displays the IPv6 statistics for all interfaces on a router.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 480

480

## Configure Interfaces Configure Verification Commands (Cont.)

View status of all interfaces with the **show ip interface brief** and **show ipv6 interface brief** commands, shown here:

```
R1# show ip interface brief
Interface          IP-Address      OK? Method Status        Protocol
GigabitEthernet0/0/0 192.168.10.1   YES manual up           up
GigabitEthernet0/0/1 209.165.200.225 YES manual up           up
Vlan1              unassigned       YES unset administratively down down
R1#
```

```
R1# show ipv6 interface brief
GigabitEthernet0/0/0      [up/up]
  FE80::201:9FF:FE89:4501
  2001:DB8:ACAD:10::1
GigabitEthernet0/0/1      [up/up]
  FE80::201:9FF:FE89:4502
  2001:DB8:FEED:224::1
Vlan1                  [administratively down/down]
  unassigned
R1#
```


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
481

## Configure Interfaces Configure Verification Commands (Cont.)

Display the contents of the IP routing tables with the **show ip route** and **show ipv6 route** commands as shown here:

```
R1# show ip route
< output omitted>
Gateway of last resort is not set
  192.168.10.0/24 is variably subnetted, 2 subnets, 2 masks
C    192.168.10.0/24 is directly connected, GigabitEthernet0/0/0
L    192.168.10.1/32 is directly connected, GigabitEthernet0/0/0
  209.165.200.0/24 is variably subnetted, 2 subnets, 2 masks
C    209.165.200.224/30 is directly connected, GigabitEthernet0/0/1
L    209.165.200.225/32 is directly connected, GigabitEthernet0/0/1
R1#
```

```
R1# show ipv6 route
<output omitted>
C  2001:DB8:ACAD:10::/64 [0/0]
  via GigabitEthernet0/0/0, directly connected
L  2001:DB8:ACAD:10::1/128 [0/0]
  via GigabitEthernet0/0/0, receive
C  2001:DB8:FEED:224::/64 [0/0]
  via GigabitEthernet0/0/1, directly connected
L  2001:DB8:FEED:224::1/128 [0/0]
  via GigabitEthernet0/0/1, receive
L  FF00::/8 [0/0]
  via Null0, receive
R1#
```


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
482

481

## Configure Interfaces Configure Verification Commands (Cont.)

Display statistics for all interfaces with the **show interfaces** command, as shown here:

```
R1# show interfaces gig0/0/0
GigabitEthernet0/0/0 is up, line protocol is up
  Hardware is ISR4321-2xIGE, address is a0e0.af0d.e140 (bia a0e0.af0d.e140)
  Description: Link to LAN
  Internet address is 192.168.10.1/24
  MTU 1500 bytes, BW 100000 Kbit/sec, DLY 100 usec,
    reliability 255/255, txload 1/255, rxload 1/255
  Encapsulation ARPA, loopback not set
  Keepalive not supported
  Full Duplex, 100Mbps, link type is auto, media type is RJ45
  Output flow-control is off, input flow-control is off
  ARP type: ARPv2, ARP Timeout 04:00:00
  Last input 00:00:01, output 00:00:35, output hang never
  Last clearing of "show interface" counters never
  Input queue: 0/375/0/0 (size/max/drops/flushes); Total output     drops: 0
  Queueing strategy: fifo
  Output queue: 0/40 (size/max)
  5 minute input rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
  5 minute output rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
    1180 packets input, 109486 bytes, 0 no buffer
    Received 84 broadcasts (0 IP multicasts)
    0 runts, 0 giants, 0 throttles

<output omitted>

R1#
```


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
483

## Configure Interfaces Configure Verification Commands (Cont.)

Display IPv4 statistics for router interfaces with the **show ip interface** command, as shown here:

```
R1# show ip interface g0/0/0
GigabitEthernet0/0/0 is up, line protocol is up
  Internet address is 192.168.10.1/24
  Broadcast address is 255.255.255.255
  Address determined by setup command
  MTU is 1500 bytes
  Helper address is not set
  Directed broadcast forwarding is disabled
  Outgoing Common access list is not set
  Outgoing access list is not set
  Inbound Common access list is not set
  Inbound access list is not set
  Proxy ARP is enabled
  Local Proxy ARP is disabled
  Security level is default
  Split horizon is enabled
  ICMP redirects are always sent
  ICMP unreachable messages are always sent
  ICMP mask replies are never sent
  IP fast switching is enabled
  IP Flow switching is disabled

<output omitted>

R1#
```


484

483

## Configure Interfaces

### Configure Verification Commands (Cont.)

Display IPv6 statistics for router interfaces with the **show ipv6 interface** command shown here:

```
R1# show ipv6 interface g0/0/0
GigabitEthernet0/0/0 is up, line protocol is up
  IPv6 is enabled, link-local address is
    FE80::86BA:8DFF:FE44:49B0
  No Virtual link-local address(es):
  Description: Link to LAN
  Global unicast address(es):
    2001:DB8:ACAD:10::1, subnet mask is 2001:DB8:ACAD:10::/64
  Joined group address(es):
    FF02::1
    FF02::1:FF00:1
    FF02::1:FF44:49B0
  MTU is 1500 bytes
  ICMP error messages limited to one every 100 milliseconds
  ICMP redirects are enabled
  ICMP unreachable messages are sent
  ND DAD is enabled, number of DAD attempts: 1
  ND reachable time is 30000 milliseconds (using 30000)
  ND NS retransmit interval is 1000 milliseconds

R1#
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

485

## 10.3 Configure the Default Gateway



© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

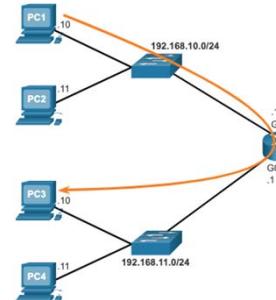
486

485

## Configure the Default Gateway

### Default Gateway on a Host

- The default gateway is used when a host sends a packet to a device on another network.
- The default gateway address is generally the router interface address attached to the local network of the host.
- To reach PC3, PC1 addresses a packet with the IPv4 address of PC3, but forwards the packet to its default gateway, the G0/0/0 interface of R1.



**Note:** The IP address of the host and the router interface must be in the same network.



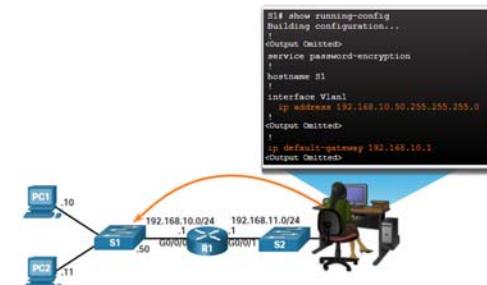
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

487

## Configure the Default Gateway

### Default Gateway on a Switch

- A switch must have a default gateway address configured to remotely manage the switch from another network.
- To configure an IPv4 default gateway on a switch, use the **ip default-gateway ip-address** global configuration command.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

488

488

**Configure Initial Router Settings****Packet Tracer – Connect a Router to a LAN**

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Display the router information.
- Configure router interfaces.
- Verify the configuration.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 489

**Configure Initial Router Settings****Packet Tracer – Troubleshoot Default Gateway Issues**

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Verify the network documentation and use tests to isolate problems.
- Determine an appropriate solution for a given problem.
- Implement the solution.
- Test to verify the problem is resolved.
- Document the solution.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 490

489

490

## 10.4 Module Practice and Quiz



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 491

**Module Practice and Quiz****Video – Network Device Differences: Part 1**

This video will cover the different physical characteristics of the following:

- Cisco 4000 Series Router.
- Cisco 2900 Series Router.
- Cisco 1900 Series Router.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 492

491

492

## Module Practice and Quiz

**Video – Network Device Differences: Part 2**

This video will cover the different configurations of the following:

- Cisco 4000 Series Router.
- Cisco 2900 Series Router.
- Cisco 1900 Series Router.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 493

## Configure Initial Router Settings

**Packet Tracer – Basic Device Configuration**

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Complete the network documentation.
- Perform basic device configurations on a router and a switch.
- Verify connectivity and troubleshoot any issues.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 494

493

494

## Configure Initial Router Settings

**Packet Tracer – Build a Switch and Router Network – Physical Mode**  
**Lab – Build a Switch and Router Network**

In both the Packet Tracer Physical Mode activity and in the Lab, you will complete the following objectives:

- Set up the topology and initialize devices.
- Configure devices and verify connectivity.
- Display device information.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 495

## Module Practice and Quiz

**What did I learn in this module?**

- The tasks that should be completed when configuring initial settings on a router.
- Configure the device name.
- Secure privileged EXEC mode.
- Secure user EXEC mode.
- Secure remote Telnet / SSH access.
- Secure all passwords in the config file.
- Provide legal notification.
- Save the configuration.
- For routers to be reachable, the router interfaces must be configured.
- Using the **no shutdown** command activates the interface. The interface must also be connected to another device, such as a switch or a router, for the physical layer to be active. There are several commands that can be used to verify interface configuration including the **show ip interface brief** and **show ipv6 interface brief**, the **show ip route** and **show ipv6 route**, as well as **show interfaces**, **show ip interface** and **show ipv6 interface**.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 496

495

496

## Module Practice and Quiz

## What did I learn in this module (Cont.)?

- For an end device to reach other networks, a default gateway must be configured.
  - The IP address of the host device and the router interface address must be in the same network.
- A switch must have a default gateway address configured to remotely manage the switch from another network.
  - To configure an IPv4 default gateway on a switch, use the **ip default-gateway ip-address** global configuration command.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

497

## Module 10: Basic Router Configuration

## New Terms and Commands

- show ip interface brief**
- show ipv6 interface brief**
- show ip route**
- show ipv6 route**
- show interfaces**
- show ip interface**
- show ipv6 interface**
- ip default-gateway**



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

498

498



## Module 11: IPv4 Addressing

## Instructor Materials

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)

## Module 11: IPv4 Addressing

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)

499

513

## Module Objectives

**Module Title:** IPv4 Addressing

**Module Objective:** Calculate an IPv4 subnetting scheme to efficiently segment your network.

Topic Title	Topic Objective
<b>IPv4 Address Structure</b>	Describe the structure of an IPv4 address including the network portion, the host portion, and the subnet mask.
<b>IPv4 Unicast, Broadcast, and Multicast</b>	Compare the characteristics and uses of the unicast, broadcast and multicast IPv4 addresses.
<b>Types of IPv4 Addresses</b>	Explain public, private, and reserved IPv4 addresses.
<b>Network Segmentation</b>	Explain how subnetting segments a network to enable better communication.
<b>Subnet an IPv4 Network</b>	Calculate IPv4 subnets for a /24 prefix.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

514

## Module Objectives (Cont.)

**Module Title:** IPv4 Addressing

**Module Objective:** Calculate an IPv4 subnetting scheme to efficiently segment your network.

Topic Title	Topic Objective
<b>Subnetting a /16 and a /8 Prefix</b>	Calculate IPv4 subnets for a /16 and a /8 prefix.
<b>Subnetting to Meet Requirements</b>	Given a set of requirements for subnetting, implement an IPv4 addressing scheme.
<b>Variable Length Subnet Masking (VLSM)</b>	Explain how to create a flexible addressing scheme using variable length subnet masking (VLSM).
<b>Structured Design</b>	Implement a VLSM addressing scheme.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

515

514

515

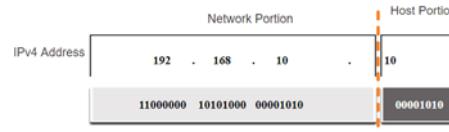
## 11.1 IPv4 Address Structure



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

### IPv4 Address Structure Network and Host Portions

- An IPv4 address is a 32-bit hierarchical address that is made up of a network portion and a host portion.
- When determining the network portion versus the host portion, you must look at the 32-bit stream.
- A subnet mask is used to determine the network and host portions.



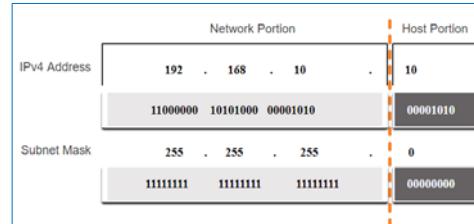
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

517

517

## IPv4 Address Structure The Subnet Mask

- To identify the network and host portions of an IPv4 address, the subnet mask is compared to the IPv4 address bit for bit, from left to right.
- The actual process used to identify the network and host portions is called ANDing.



cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

518

## IPv4 Address Structure The Prefix Length

- A prefix length is a less cumbersome method used to identify a subnet mask address.
- The prefix length is the number of bits set to 1 in the subnet mask.
- It is written in "slash notation" therefore, count the number of bits in the subnet mask and prepend it with a slash.

Subnet Mask	32-bit Address	Prefix Length
255.0.0.0	11111111.00000000.00000000.00000000	/8
255.255.0.0	11111111.11111111.00000000.00000000	/16
255.255.255.0	11111111.11111111.11111111.00000000	/24
255.255.255.128	11111111.11111111.11111111.10000000	/25
255.255.255.192	11111111.11111111.11111111.11000000	/26
255.255.255.224	11111111.11111111.11111111.11100000	/27
255.255.255.240	11111111.11111111.11111111.11110000	/28
255.255.255.248	11111111.11111111.11111111.11111000	/29
255.255.255.252	11111111.11111111.11111111.11111100	/30

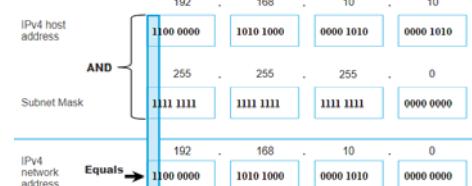
cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

519

## IPv4 Address Structure Determining the Network: Logical AND

- A logical AND Boolean operation is used in determining the network address.
- Logical AND is the comparison of two bits where only a 1 AND 1 produces a 1 and any other combination results in a 0.
- $1 \text{ AND } 1 = 1$ ,  $0 \text{ AND } 1 = 0$ ,  $1 \text{ AND } 0 = 0$ ,  $0 \text{ AND } 0 = 0$
- $1 = \text{True}$  and  $0 = \text{False}$
- To identify the network address, the host IPv4 address is logically ANDed, bit by bit, with the subnet mask to identify the network address.



cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

520

## IPv4 Address Structure Video – Network, Host and Broadcast Addresses

This video will cover the following:

- Network address
- Broadcast Address
- First usable host
- Last usable host

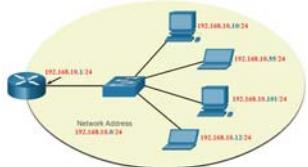
cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

521

## IPv4 Address Structure Network, Host, and Broadcast Addresses

- Within each network are three types of IP addresses:
- Network address
- Host addresses
- Broadcast address



	Network Portion			Host Portion	Host Bits
Subnet mask <b>255.255.255.0 or /24</b>	255	255	255	0	00000000
Network address <b>192.168.10.0 or /24</b>	192	168	10	0	All 0s
First address <b>192.168.10.1 or /24</b>	192	168	10	1	All 0s and a 1
Last address <b>192.168.10.254 or /24</b>	192	168	10	254	All 1s and a 0
Broadcast address <b>192.168.10.255 or /24</b>	192	168	10	255	All 1s

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 522

## 11.2 IPv4 Unicast, Broadcast, and Multicast

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 523

### IPv4 Unicast, Broadcast, and Multicast Unicast

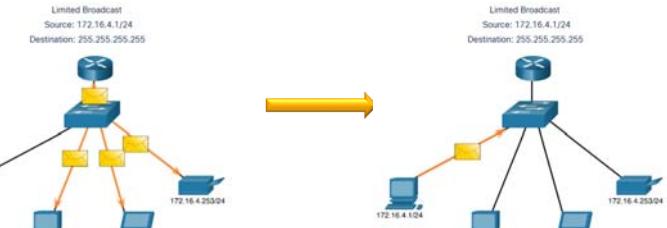
- Unicast transmission is sending a packet to one destination IP address.
- For example, the PC at 172.16.4.1 sends a unicast packet to the printer at 172.16.4.253.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 524

### IPv4 Unicast, Broadcast, and Multicast Broadcast

- Broadcast transmission is sending a packet to all other destination IP addresses.
- For example, the PC at 172.16.4.1 sends a broadcast packet to all IPv4 hosts.



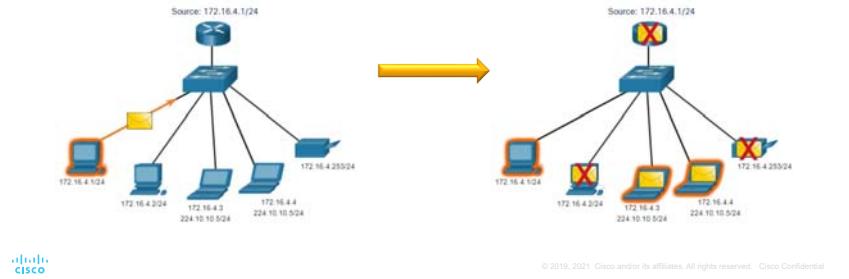
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 525

522

523

## IPv4 Unicast, Broadcast, and Multicast Multicast

- Multicast transmission is sending a packet to a multicast address group.
- For example, the PC at 172.16.4.1 sends a multicast packet to the multicast group address 224.10.10.5.



526

## 11.3 Types of IPv4 Addresses

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 527

527

## Types of IPv4 Addresses Public and Private IPv4 Addresses

- As defined in RFC 1918, public IPv4 addresses are globally routable between internet service provider (ISP) routers.
- Private addresses are common blocks of addresses used by most organizations to assign IPv4 addresses to internal hosts.
- Private IPv4 addresses are not unique and can be used internally within any network.
- However, private addresses are not globally routable.

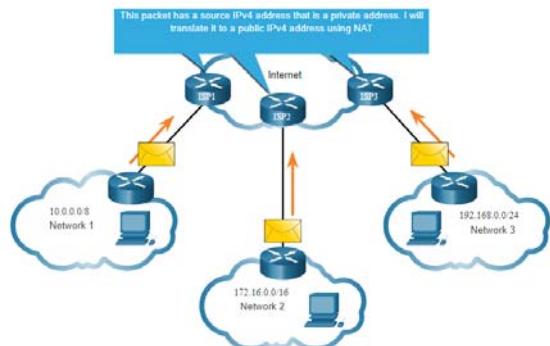
Network Address and Prefix	RFC 1918 Private Address Range
10.0.0.0/8	10.0.0.0 - 10.255.255.255
172.16.0.0/12	172.16.0.0 - 172.31.255.255
192.168.0.0/16	192.168.0.0 - 192.168.255.255

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 528

## Types of IPv4 Addresses Routing to the Internet

- Network Address Translation (NAT) translates private IPv4 addresses to public IPv4 addresses.
- NAT is typically enabled on the edge router connecting to the internet.
- It translates the internal private address to a public global IP address.



528

529

## Types of IPv4 Addresses Special Use IPv4 Addresses

### Loopback addresses

- 127.0.0.0 /8 (127.0.0.1 to 127.255.255.254)
- Commonly identified as only 127.0.0.1
- Used on a host to test if TCP/IP is operational.

```
C:\Users\NetAcad> ping 127.0.0.1
Pinging 127.0.0.1 with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 127.0.0.1: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=128
Reply from 127.0.0.1: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=128
```

### Link-Local addresses

- 169.254.0.0 /16 (169.254.0.1 to 169.254.255.254)
- Commonly known as the Automatic Private IP Addressing (APIPA) addresses or self-assigned addresses.
- Used by Windows DHCP clients to self-configure when no DHCP servers are available.

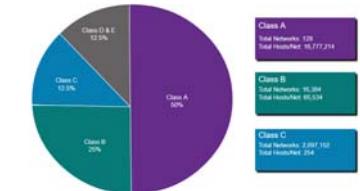


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 530

## Types of IPv4 Addresses Legacy Classful Addressing

RFC 790 (1981) allocated IPv4 addresses in classes

- Class A (0.0.0.0/8 to 127.0.0.0/8)
- Class B (128.0.0.0 /16 – 191.255.0.0 /16)
- Class C (192.0.0.0 /24 – 223.255.255.0 /24)
- Class D (224.0.0.0 to 239.0.0.0)
- Class E (240.0.0.0 – 255.0.0.0)
- Classful addressing wasted many IPv4 addresses.



Classful address allocation was replaced with classless addressing which ignores the rules of classes (A, B, C).



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 531

530

## Types of IPv4 Addresses Assignment of IP Addresses

- The Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) manages and allocates blocks of IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to five Regional Internet Registries (RIRs).
- RIRs are responsible for allocating IP addresses to ISPs who provide IPv4 address blocks to smaller ISPs and organizations.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 532

## 11.4 Network Segmentation



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 533

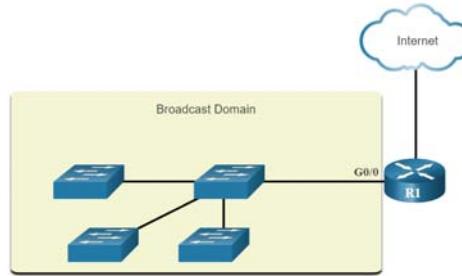
532

533

## Network Segmentation

### Broadcast Domains and Segmentation

- Many protocols use broadcasts or multicasts (e.g., ARP use broadcasts to locate other devices, hosts send DHCP discover broadcasts to locate a DHCP server.)
- Switches propagate broadcasts out all interfaces except the interface on which it was received.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

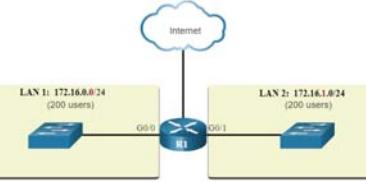
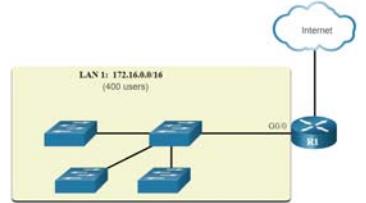
534

- The only device that stops broadcasts is a router.
- Routers do not propagate broadcasts.
- Each router interface connects to a broadcast domain and broadcasts are only propagated within that specific broadcast domain.

## Network Segmentation

### Problems with Large Broadcast Domains

- A problem with a large broadcast domain is that these hosts can generate excessive broadcasts and negatively affect the network.
- The solution is to reduce the size of the network to create smaller broadcast domains in a process called subnetting.
- Dividing the network address 172.16.0.0 /16 into two subnets of 200 users each: 172.16.0.0 /24 and 172.16.1.0 /24.
- Broadcasts are only propagated within the smaller broadcast domains.



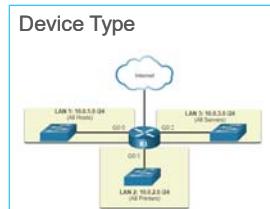
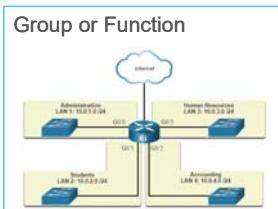
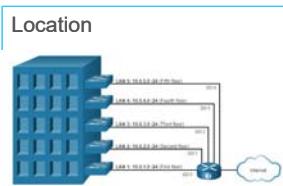
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

535

## Network Segmentation

### Reasons for Segmenting Networks

- Subnetting reduces overall network traffic and improves network performance.
- It can be used to implement security policies between subnets.
- Subnetting reduces the number of devices affected by abnormal broadcast traffic.
- Subnets are used for a variety of reasons including by:



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

536

## 11.5 Subnet an IPv4 Network

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

537

536

## Subnet an IPv4 Network **Subnet on an Octet Boundary**

- Networks are most easily subnetted at the octet boundary of /8, /16, and /24.
  - Notice that using longer prefix lengths decreases the number of hosts per subnet.

Prefix Length	Subnet Mask	Subnet Mask in Binary (n = network, h = host)	# of hosts
/8	255.0.0.0	nnnnnnnn.aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa 11111111.00000000.00000000.00000000	16,777,214
/16	255.255.0.0	nnnnnnnn.nnnnnnnn.aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa 11111111.11111111.00000000.00000000	65,534
/24	255.255.255.0	nnnnnnnn.nnnnnnnn.aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa 11111111.11111111.11111111.00000000	254



## Subnet an IPv4 Network **Subnet on an Octet Boundary (Cont.)**

- In the first table 10.0.0.0/8 is subnetted using /16 and in the second table, a /24 mask.

Subnet Address (256 Possible Subnets)	Host Range (65,534 possible hosts per subnet)	Broadcast	Subnet Address (65,536 Possible Subnets)	Host Range (254 possible hosts per subnet)	Broadcast
10.0.0.0/16	10.0.0.1 - 10.0.255.254	10.0.255.255	10.0.0.0/24	10.0.0.1 - 10.0.0.254	10.0.0.255
10.1.0.0/16	10.1.0.1 - 10.1.255.254	10.1.255.255	10.0.1.0/24	10.0.1.1 - 10.0.1.254	10.0.1.255
10.2.0.0/16	10.2.0.1 - 10.2.255.254	10.2.255.255	10.0.2.0/24	10.0.2.1 - 10.0.2.254	10.0.2.255
...	...	...	...	...	...
10.3.0.0/16	10.3.0.1 - 10.3.255.254	10.3.255.255	10.0.255.0/24	10.0.255.1 - 10.0.255.254	10.0.255.255
10.4.0.0/16	10.4.0.1 - 10.4.255.254	10.4.255.255	10.1.0.0/24	10.1.0.1 - 10.1.0.254	10.1.0.255
10.5.0.0/16	10.5.0.1 - 10.5.255.254	10.5.255.255	10.1.1.0/24	10.1.1.1 - 10.1.1.254	10.1.1.255
10.6.0.0/16	10.6.0.1 - 10.6.255.254	10.6.255.255	10.1.2.0/24	10.1.2.1 - 10.1.2.254	10.1.2.255
10.7.0.0/16	10.7.0.1 - 10.7.255.254	10.7.255.255	...	...	...
...	...	...	10.100.0.0/24	10.100.0.1 - 10.100.0.254	10.100.0.255
10.255.0.0/16	10.255.0.1 - 10.255.255.254	10.255.255.255	...	...	...
			10.255.255.0/24	10.255.255.1 - 10.255.255.254	10.255.255.255



538

## Subnet an IPv4 Network Subnet within an Octet Boundary

- Refer to the table to see six ways to subnet a /24 network.

Prefix Length	Subnet Mask	Subnet Mask in Binary (n = network, h = host)	# of subnets	# of hosts
/25	255.255.255.128	nnnnnnnn, nnnnnnnn, nnnnnnnn, nnhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.10000000	2	126
/26	255.255.255.192	nnnnnnnn, nnnnnnnn, nnnnnnnn, nnhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.11000000	4	62
/27	255.255.255.224	nnnnnnnn, nnnnnnnn, nnnnnnnn, nnmhhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.11000000	8	30
/28	255.255.255.240	nnnnnnnn, nnnnnnnn, nnnnnnnn, nnmhhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.11110000	16	14
/29	255.255.255.248	nnnnnnnn, nnnnnnnn, nnnnnnnn, nnmhhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.11111000	32	6
/30	255.255.255.252	nnnnnnnn, nnnnnnnn, nnnnnnnn, nnmnnnh 11111111.11111111.11111111.11111100	64	2



## Subnet an IPv4 Network Video – The Subnet Mask

- This video will demonstrate the process of subnetting.



540

541

## Subnet an IPv4 Network

## Video – Subnet with the Magic Number

- This video will demonstrate subnetting with the magic number.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

542

## Subnet an IPv4 Network

## Packet Tracer – Subnet an IPv4 Network

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Design an IPv4 Network Subnetting Scheme
- Configure the Devices
- Test and Troubleshoot the Network



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

543

543

## 11.6 Subnet a Slash 16 and a Slash 8 Prefix



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

544

## Subnet a Slash 16 and a Slash 8 Prefix

## Create Subnets with a Slash 16 prefix

- The table highlights all the possible scenarios for subnetting a /16 prefix.



Prefix Length	Subnet Mask	Network Address (n = network, h = host)	# of subnets	# of hosts
/17	255.255.128.0	nmmmmnnn.mmmmmnnn.ahhhhhh.hhhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.10000000.00000000	2	32766
/18	255.255.192.0	nmmmmnnn.mmmmmnnn.ahhhhhh.jhhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11000000.00000000	4	16382
/19	255.255.224.0	nmmmmnnn.mmmmmnnn.ahhhhhh.jhhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11100000.00000000	8	8190
/20	255.255.240.0	nmmmmnnn.mmmmmnnn.ahhhhhh.hhhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11110000.00000000	16	4094
/21	255.255.248.0	nmmmmnnn.mmmmmnnn.ahhhhhh.hhhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11111000.00000000	32	2046
/22	255.255.252.0	nmmmmnnn.mmmmmnnn.ahhhhhh.hhhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11111100.00000000	64	1022
/23	255.255.254.0	nmmmmnnn.mmmmmnnn.ahhhhhh.hhhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11111110.00000000	128	510
/24	255.255.255.0	nmmmmnnn.mmmmmnnn.ahhhhhh.hhhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.00000000	256	254
/25	255.255.255.128	nmmmmnnn.mmmmmnnn.ahhhhhh.hhhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.10000000	512	126
/26	255.255.255.192	nmmmmnnn.mmmmmnnn.ahhhhhh.hhhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.11000000	1024	62
/27	255.255.255.224	nmmmmnnn.mmmmmnnn.ahhhhhh.hhhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.11100000	2048	30
/28	255.255.255.240	nmmmmnnn.mmmmmnnn.ahhhhhh.hhhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.11110000	4096	14
/29	255.255.255.248	nmmmmnnn.mmmmmnnn.ahhhhhh.hhhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.11111000	8192	6
/30	255.255.255.252	nmmmmnnn.mmmmmnnn.ahhhhhh.hhhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.11111100	16384	2

545

## Subnet a Slash 16 and a Slash 8 Prefix Create 100 Subnets with a Slash 16 prefix

Consider a large enterprise that requires at least 100 subnets and has chosen the private address 172.16.0.0/16 as its internal network address.

- The figure displays the number of subnets that can be created when borrowing bits from the third octet and the fourth octet.
- Notice there are now up to 14 host bits that can be borrowed (i.e., last two bits cannot be borrowed).

To satisfy the requirement of 100 subnets for the enterprise, 7 bits (i.e.,  $2^7 = 128$  subnets) would need to be borrowed (for a total of 128 subnets).



cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

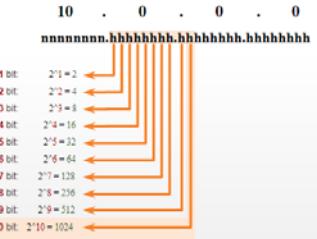
546

## Subnet a Slash 16 and a Slash 8 Prefix Create 1000 Subnets with a Slash 8 prefix

Consider a small ISP that requires 1000 subnets for its clients using network address 10.0.0.0/8 which means there are 8 bits in the network portion and 24 host bits available to borrow toward subnetting.

- The figure displays the number of subnets that can be created when borrowing bits from the second and third.
- Notice there are now up to 10 host bits that can be borrowed (i.e., last two bits cannot be borrowed).

To satisfy the requirement of 1000 subnets for the enterprise, 10 bits (i.e.,  $2^{10}=1024$  subnets) would need to be borrowed (for a total of 128 subnets)



cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

547

546

## Subnet a Slash 16 and a Slash 8 Prefix Video – Subnet Across Multiple Octets

This video will demonstrate creating subnets across multiple octets.

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

548

## Subnet a Slash 16 and a Slash 8 Prefix Lab – Calculate IPv4 Subnets

In this lab, you will complete the following objectives:

- Part 1: Determine IPv4 Address Subnetting
- Part 2: Calculate IPv4 Address Subnetting

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

549

548

# 11.7 Subnet to Meet Requirements

550

## Subnet to Meet Requirements Minimize Unused Host IPv4 Addresses and Maximize Subnets

There are two considerations when planning subnets:

- The number of host addresses required for each network
- The number of individual subnets needed

Prefix Length	Subnet Mask	Subnet Mask in Binary (n = network, h = host)	# of subnets	# of hosts
/25	255.255.255.128	nnnnnnnn.nnnnnnnn.nnnnnnnn.nhhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.10000000	2	126
/26	255.255.255.192	nnnnnnnn.nnnnnnnn.nnnnnnnn.rnhhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.11000000	4	62
/27	255.255.255.224	nnnnnnnn.nnnnnnnn.nnnnnnnn.rnnhhhhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.11100000	8	30
/28	255.255.255.240	nnnnnnnn.nnnnnnnn.nnnnnnnn.rnnnnhhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.11110000	16	14
/29	255.255.255.248	nnnnnnnn.nnnnnnnn.nnnnnnnn.rnnnnhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.11111000	32	6
/30	255.255.255.252	nnnnnnnn.nnnnnnnn.nnnnnnnn.rnnnnhh 11111111.11111111.11111111.11111100	64	2

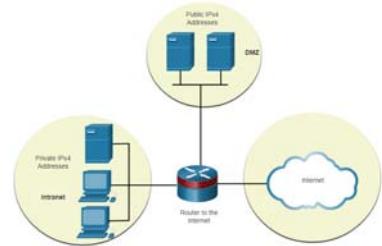
552

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 552

## Subnet to Meet Requirements Subnet Private versus Public IPv4 Address Space

Enterprise networks will have an:

- Intranet - A company's internal network typically using private IPv4 addresses.
- DMZ – A company's internet facing servers. Devices in the DMZ use public IPv4 addresses.
- A company could use the 10.0.0.0/8 and subnet on the /16 or /24 network boundary.
- The DMZ devices would have to be configured with public IP addresses.

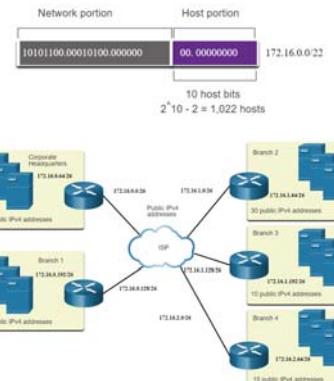


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 551

551

## Subnet to Meet Requirements Example: Efficient IPv4 Subnetting

- In this example, corporate headquarters has been allocated a public network address of 172.16.0.0/22 (10 host bits) by its ISP providing 1,022 host addresses.
- There are five sites and therefore five internet connections which means the organization requires 10 subnets with the largest subnet requires 40 addresses.
- It allocated 10 subnets with a /26 (i.e., 255.255.255.192) subnet mask.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 553

553

Subnet to Meet Requirements

## Packet Tracer – Subnetting Scenario

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Design an IP Addressing Scheme
- Assign IP Addresses to Network Devices and Verify Connectivity



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 554

## 11.8 VLSM



© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 555

554

555

VLSM

## Video – VLSM Basics

- This video will explain VLSM basics.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 556

VLSM

## Video – VLSM Example

- This video will demonstrate creating subnets specific to the needs of the network.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 557

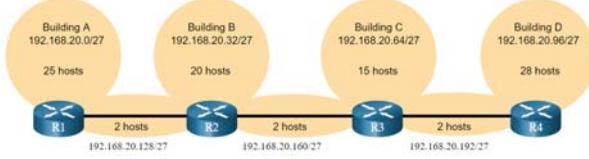
556

557

## VLSM IPv4 Address Conservation

Given the topology, 7 subnets are required (i.e., four LANs and three WAN links) and the largest number of host is in Building D with 28 hosts.

- A /27 mask would provide 8 subnets of 30 host IP addresses and therefore support this topology.

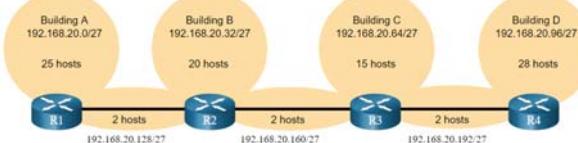


558

## VLSM IPv4 Address Conservation (Cont.)

However, the point-to-point WAN links only require two addresses and therefore waste 28 addresses each for a total of 84 unused addresses.

Host portion  
 $2^5 - 2 = 30$  host IP addresses per subnet  
 $30 - 2 = 28$   
Each WAN subnet wastes 28 addresses  
 $28 \times 3 = 84$   
84 addresses are unused



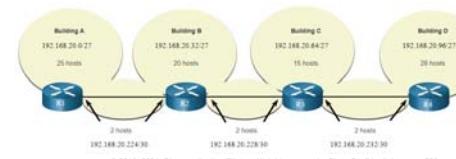
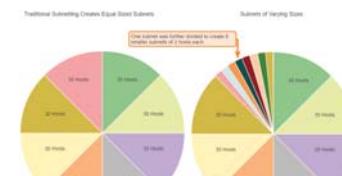
- Applying a traditional subnetting scheme to this scenario is not very efficient and is wasteful.
- VLSM was developed to avoid wasting addresses by enabling us to subnet a subnet.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 559

559

## VLSM VLSM

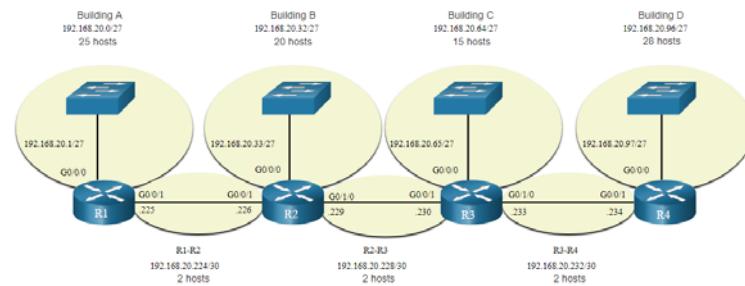
- The left side displays the traditional subnetting scheme (i.e., the same subnet mask) while the right side illustrates how VLSM can be used to subnet a subnet and divided the last subnet into eight /30 subnets.
- When using VLSM, always begin by satisfying the host requirements of the largest subnet and continue subnetting until the host requirements of the smallest subnet are satisfied.
- The resulting topology with VLSM applied.



560

## VLSM VLSM Topology Address Assignment

- Using VLSM subnets, the LAN and inter-router networks can be addressed without unnecessary waste as shown in the logical topology diagram.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 561

561

## 11.9 Structured Design

562

### Structured Design IPv4 Network Address Planning

IP network planning is crucial to develop a scalable solution to an enterprise network.

- To develop an IPv4 network wide addressing scheme, you need to know how many subnets are needed, how many hosts a particular subnet requires, what devices are part of the subnet, which parts of your network use private addresses, and which use public, and many other determining factors.

Examine the needs of an organization's network usage and how the subnets will be structured.

- Perform a network requirement study by looking at the entire network to determine how each area will be segmented.
- Determine how many subnets are needed and how many hosts per subnet.
- Determine DHCP address pools and Layer 2 VLAN pools.

563

### Structured Design Packet Tracer – VLSM Design and Implementation Practice

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Examine the Network Requirements
- Design the VLSM Addressing Scheme
- Assign IP Addresses to Devices and Verify Connectivity

565

### Structured Design Device Address Assignment

Within a network, there are different types of devices that require addresses:

- End user clients** – Most use DHCP to reduce errors and burden on network support staff. IPv6 clients can obtain address information using DHCPv6 or SLAAC.
- Servers and peripherals** – These should have a predictable static IP address.
- Servers that are accessible from the internet** – Servers must have a public IPv4 address, most often accessed using NAT.
- Intermediary devices** – Devices are assigned addresses for network management, monitoring, and security.
- Gateway** – Routers and firewall devices are gateway for the hosts in that network.

When developing an IP addressing scheme, it is generally recommended that you have a set pattern of how addresses are allocated to each type of device.

564

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 564

565

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 565

## 11.10 Module Practice and Quiz

566

### Structured Design Packet Tracer – Design and Implement a VLSM Addressing Scheme

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Design a VLSM IP addressing scheme given requirements
- Configure addressing on network devices and hosts
- Verify IP connectivity
- Troubleshoot connectivity issues as required.

567

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 567

### Module Practice and Quiz

#### What did I learn in this module?

- The IP addressing structure consists of a 32-bit hierarchical network address that identifies a network and a host portion. Network devices use a process called ANDing using the IP address and associated subnet mask to identify the network and host portions.
- Destination IPv4 packets can be unicast, broadcast, and multicast.
- There are globally routable IP addresses as assigned by the IANA and there are three ranges of private IP network addresses that cannot be routed globally but can be used on all internal private networks.
- Reduce large broadcast domains using subnets to create smaller broadcast domains, reduce overall network traffic, and improve network performance.
- Create IPv4 subnets using one or more of the host bits as network bits. However, networks are most easily subnetted at the octet boundary of /8, /16, and /24.
- Larger networks can be subnetted at the /8 or /16 boundaries.
- Use VLSM to reduce the number of unused host addresses per subnet.

569

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 569

568

568

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 568

## Module Practice and Quiz

## What did I learn in this module? (Cont.)

- VLSM allows a network space to be divided into unequal parts. Always begin by satisfying the host requirements of the largest subnet. Continue subnetting until the host requirements of the smallest subnet are satisfied.
- When designing a network addressing scheme, consider internal, DMZ, and external requirements. Use a consistent internal IP addressing scheme with a set pattern of how addresses are allocated to each type of device.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

570

## Module 11: IPv4 Addressing

## New Terms and Commands

- prefix length
- logical AND
- network address
- broadcast address
- first usable address
- last usable address
- unicast, broadcast, and multicast transmissions
- private addresses
- public addresses
- Network Address Translation (NAT)
- loopback addresses
- Automatic Private IP Addressing (APIPA)
- addresses
- classful addressing (Class A, B, C, D, and E)

Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA)  
 Regional Internet Registries (RIRs)  
 AfriNIC, APNIC, ARIN, LACNIC, and RIPE NCC  
 broadcast domains  
 subnets  
 octet boundary  
 variable-length subnet mask (VLSM)



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

571

571

## Module 12: IPv6 Addressing

## Instructor Materials

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)

572

## What to Expect in this Module

- To facilitate learning, the following features within the GUI may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Animations	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Videos	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Check Your Understanding(CYU)	Per topic online quiz to help learners gauge content understanding.
Interactive Activities	A variety of formats to help learners gauge content understanding.
Syntax Checker	Small simulations that expose learners to Cisco command line to practice configuration skills.
PT Activity	Simulation and modeling activities designed to explore, acquire, reinforce, and expand skills.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

574

574

## What to Expect in this Module (Cont.)

- To facilitate learning, the following features may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Packet Tracer Physical Mode Activity	These activities are completed using Packet Tracer in Physical Mode.
Hands-On Labs	Labs designed for working with physical equipment.
Class Activities	These are found on the Instructor Resources page. Class Activities are designed to facilitate learning, class discussion, and collaboration.
Module Quizzes	Self-assessments that integrate concepts and skills learned throughout the series of topics presented in the module.
Module Summary	Briefly recaps module content.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 575

575

## Module 12: IPv6 Addressing

Introduction to Networks v7.0 (ITN)

584

## Module Objectives

**Module Title:** IPv6 Addressing

**Module Objective:** Implement an IPv6 Addressing scheme.

Topic Title	Topic Objective
IPv4 Issues	Explain the need for IPv6 addressing.
IPv6 Address Representation	Explain how IPv6 addresses are represented.
IPv6 Address Types	Compare types of IPv6 network addresses.
GUA and LLA Static Configuration	Explain how to Configure static global unicast and link-local IPv6 network addresses.
Dynamic Addressing for IPv6 GUAs	Explain how to configure global unicast addresses dynamically.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 585

585

## Module Objectives (Cont.)

**Module Title:** IPv6 Addressing

**Module Objective:** Implement an IPv6 Addressing scheme.

Topic Title	Topic Objective
Dynamic Addressing for IPv6 LLAs	Configure link-local addresses dynamically.
IPv6 Multicast Addresses	Identify IPv6 addresses.
Subnet an IPv6 Network	Implement a subnetted IPv6 addressing scheme.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 586

586

## 12.1 IPv4 Issues

587

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 587

### IPv4 Issues Need for IPv6

- IPv4 is running out of addresses. IPv6 is the successor to IPv4. IPv6 has a much larger 128-bit address space.
- The development of IPv6 also included fixes for IPv4 limitations and other enhancements.
- With an increasing internet population, a limited IPv4 address space, issues with NAT and the IoT, the time has come to begin the transition to IPv6.



© 2016, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 588

588

### IPv4 Issues IPv4 and IPv6 Coexistence

Both IPv4 and IPv6 will coexist in the near future and the transition will take several years.

The IETF has created various protocols and tools to help network administrators migrate their networks to IPv6. These migration techniques can be divided into three categories:

- **Dual stack** -The devices run both IPv4 and IPv6 protocol stacks simultaneously.
- **Tunneling** – A method of transporting an IPv6 packet over an IPv4 network. The IPv6 packet is encapsulated inside an IPv4 packet.
- **Translation** - Network Address Translation 64 (NAT64) allows IPv6-enabled devices to communicate with IPv4-enabled devices using a translation technique similar to NAT for IPv4.

**Note:** Tunneling and translation are for transitioning to native IPv6 and should only be used where needed. The goal should be native IPv6 communications from source to destination.

589

© 2016, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 589

## 12.2 IPv6 Address Representation

590

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 590

## IPv6 Address Representation IPv6 Addressing Formats

- IPv6 addresses are 128 bits in length and written in hexadecimal.
- IPv6 addresses are not case-sensitive and can be written in either lowercase or uppercase.
- The preferred format for writing an IPv6 address is `x:x:x:x:x:x:x:x`, with each “x” consisting of four hexadecimal values.
- In IPv6, a hexet is the unofficial term used to refer to a segment of 16 bits, or four hexadecimal values.
- Examples of IPv6 addresses in the preferred format:  
`2001:0db8:0000:1111:0000:0000:0000:0200`  
`2001:0db8:0000:00a3:abcd:0000:0000:1234`



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

591

## IPv6 Address Representation Rule 1 – Omit Leading Zero

The first rule to help reduce the notation of IPv6 addresses is to omit any leading 0s (zeros).

### Examples:

- `01ab` can be represented as `1ab`
- `09f0` can be represented as `9f0`
- `0a00` can be represented as `a00`
- `00ab` can be represented as `ab`

**Note:** This rule only applies to leading 0s, NOT to trailing 0s, otherwise the address would be ambiguous.

Type	Format
Preferred	<code>2001:0db8:0000:1111:0000:0000:0000:0200</code>
No leading zeros	<code>2001:db8:0:1111:0:0:0:200</code>



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

592

## IPv6 Address Representation Rule 2 – Double Colon

A double colon (:) can replace any single, contiguous string of one or more 16-bit hexets consisting of all zeros.

### Example:

- `2001:db8:cafe:1:0:0:0:1` (leading 0s omitted) could be represented as `2001:db8:cafe:1::1`

**Note:** The double colon (:) can only be used once within an address, otherwise there would be more than one possible resulting address.

Type	Format
Preferred	<code>2001:0db8:0000:1111:0000:0000:0000:0200</code>
Compressed	<code>2001:db8:0:1111::200</code>



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

593

## 12.3 IPv6 Address Types



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

594

593

125

## IPv6 Address Types Unicast, Multicast, Anycast

There are three broad categories of IPv6 addresses:

- Unicast** – Unicast uniquely identifies an interface on an IPv6-enabled device.
- Multicast** – Multicast is used to send a single IPv6 packet to multiple destinations.
- Anycast** – This is any IPv6 unicast address that can be assigned to multiple devices. A packet sent to an anycast address is routed to the nearest device having that address.

**Note:** Unlike IPv4, IPv6 does not have a broadcast address. However, there is an IPv6 all-nodes multicast address that essentially gives the same result.

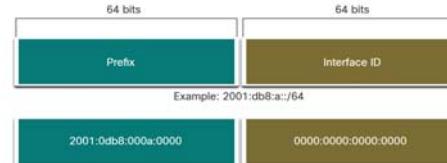


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 595

## IPv6 Address Types IPv6 Prefix Length

Prefix length is represented in slash notation and is used to indicate the network portion of an IPv6 address.

The IPv6 prefix length can range from 0 to 128. The recommended IPv6 prefix length for LANs and most other types of networks is /64.



**Note:** It is strongly recommended to use a 64-bit Interface ID for most networks. This is because stateless address autoconfiguration (SLAAC) uses 64 bits for the Interface ID. It also makes subnetting easier to create and manage.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 596

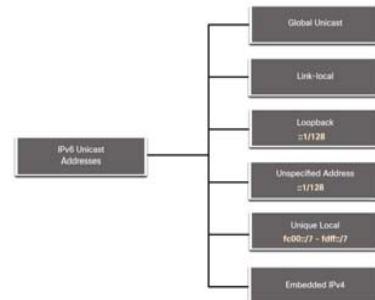
595

596

## IPv6 Address Types Types of IPv6 Unicast Addresses

Unlike IPv4 devices that have only a single address, IPv6 addresses typically have two unicast addresses:

- Global Unicast Address (GUA)** – This is similar to a public IPv4 address. These are globally unique, internet-routable addresses.
- Link-local Address (LLA)** - Required for every IPv6-enabled device and used to communicate with other devices on the same local link. LLAs are not routable and are confined to a single link.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 597

## IPv6 Address Types A Note About the Unique Local Address

The IPv6 unique local addresses (range fc00::/7 to fdff::/7) have some similarity to RFC 1918 private addresses for IPv4, but there are significant differences:

- Unique local addresses are used for local addressing within a site or between a limited number of sites.
- Unique local addresses can be used for devices that will never need to access another network.
- Unique local addresses are not globally routable or translated to a global IPv6 address.

**Note:** Many sites use the private nature of RFC 1918 addresses to attempt to secure or hide their network from potential security risks. This was never the intended use of ULAs.



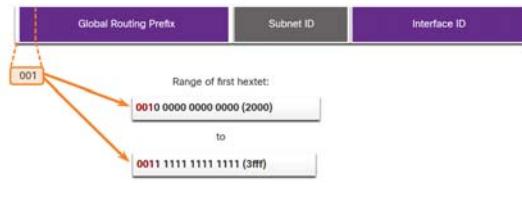
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 598

598

## IPv6 Address Types IPv6 GUA

IPv6 global unicast addresses (GUAs) are globally unique and routable on the IPv6 internet.

- Currently, only GUAs with the first three bits of 001 or 2000::/3 are being assigned.
- Currently available GUAs begin with a decimal 2 or a 3 (This is only 1/8th of the total available IPv6 address space).



## IPv6 Address Types IPv6 GUA Structure

### Global Routing Prefix:

- The global routing prefix is the prefix, or network, portion of the address that is assigned by the provider, such as an ISP, to a customer or site. The global routing prefix will vary depending on ISP policies.

### Subnet ID:

- The Subnet ID field is the area between the Global Routing Prefix and the Interface ID. The Subnet ID is used by an organization to identify subnets within its site.

### Interface ID:

- The IPv6 interface ID is equivalent to the host portion of an IPv4 address. It is strongly recommended that in most cases /64 subnets should be used, which creates a 64-bit interface ID.

**Note:** IPv6 allows the all-0s and all-1s host addresses can be assigned to a device. The all-0s address is reserved as a Subnet-Router anycast address, and should be assigned only to routers.

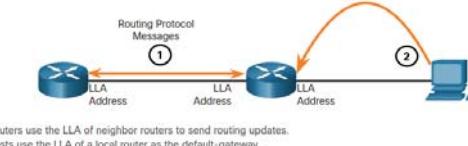
599

600

## IPv6 Address Types IPv6 LLA

An IPv6 link-local address (LLA) enables a device to communicate with other IPv6-enabled devices on the same link and only on that link (subnet).

- Packets with a source or destination LLA cannot be routed.
- Every IPv6-enabled network interface must have an LLA.
- If an LLA is not configured manually on an interface, the device will automatically create one.
- IPv6 LLAs are in the fe80::/10 range.



1. Routers use the LLA of neighbor routers to send routing updates.  
2. Hosts use the LLA of a local router as the default-gateway.

601

602

## 12.4 GUA and LLA Static Configuration

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 602

## GUA and LLA Static Configuration

### Static GUA Configuration on a Router

Most IPv6 configuration and verification commands in the Cisco IOS are similar to their IPv4 counterparts. In many cases, the only difference is the use of **ipv6** in place of **ip** within the commands.

- The command to configure an IPv6 GUA on an interface is: **ipv6 address ipv6-address/prefix-length**.
- The example shows commands to configure a GUA on the G0/0/0 interface on R1:

```
R1(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/0/0
R1(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:db8:acad:1::1/64
R1(config-if)# no shutdown
R1(config-if)# exit
```

 603

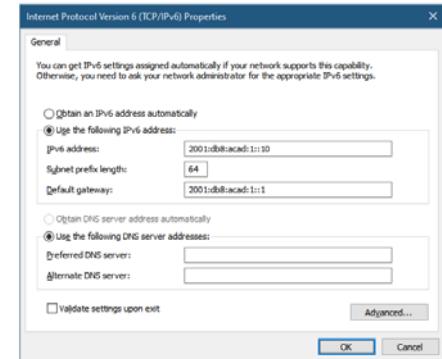
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 603

## GUA and LLA Static Configuration

### Static GUA Configuration on a Windows Host

- Manually configuring the IPv6 address on a host is similar to configuring an IPv4 address.
- The GUA or LLA of the router interface can be used as the default gateway. Best practice is to use the LLA.

**Note:** When DHCPv6 or SLAAC is used, the LLA of the router will automatically be specified as the default gateway address.



 604

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 604

## GUA and LLA Static Configuration

### Static GUA Configuration of a Link-Local Unicast Address

Configuring the LLA manually lets you create an address that is recognizable and easier to remember.

- LLAs can be configured manually using the **ipv6 address ipv6-link-local-address link-local** command.
- The example shows commands to configure a LLA on the G0/0/0 interface on R1

```
R1(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/0/0
R1(config-if)# ipv6 address fe80::1:1 link-local
R1(config-if)# no shutdown
R1(config-if)# exit
```

**Note:** The same LLA can be configured on each link as long as it is unique on that link. Common practice is to create a different LLA on each interface of the router to make it easy to identify the router and the specific interface.

 605

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 605

## 12.5 Dynamic Addressing for IPv6 GUAs

 606

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 606

## Dynamic Addressing for IPv6 GUAs RS and RA Messages

Devices obtain GUA addresses dynamically through Internet Control Message Protocol version 6 (ICMPv6) messages.

- Router Solicitation (RS) messages are sent by host devices to discover IPv6 routers
- Router Advertisement (RA) messages are sent by routers to inform hosts on how to obtain an IPv6 GUA and provide useful network information such as:
  - Network prefix and prefix length
  - Default gateway address
  - DNS addresses and domain name
- The RA can provide three methods for configuring an IPv6 GUA :
  - SLAAC
  - SLAAC with stateless DHCPv6 server
  - Stateful DHCPv6 (no SLAAC)


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 607

## Dynamic Addressing for IPv6 GUAs Method 1: SLAAC

- SLAAC allows a device to configure a GUA without the services of DHCPv6.
- Devices obtain the necessary information to configure a GUA from the ICMPv6 RA messages of the local router.
- The prefix is provided by the RA and the device uses either the EUI-64 or random generation method to create an interface ID.


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 608

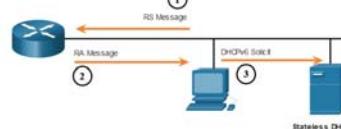
608

## Dynamic Addressing for IPv6 GUAs Method 2: SLAAC and Stateless DHCP

An RA can instruct a device to use both SLAAC and stateless DHCPv6.

The RA message suggests devices use the following:

- SLAAC to create its own IPv6 GUA
- The router LLA, which is the RA source IPv6 address, as the default gateway address
- A stateless DHCPv6 server to obtain other information such as a DNS server address and a domain name


Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 609


## Dynamic Addressing for IPv6 GUAs Method 3: Stateful DHCPv6

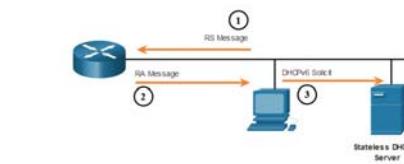
An RA can instruct a device to use stateful DHCPv6 only.

Stateful DHCPv6 is similar to DHCP for IPv4. A device can automatically receive a GUA, prefix length, and the addresses of DNS servers from a stateful DHCPv6 server.

The RA message suggests devices use the following:

- The router LLA, which is the RA source IPv6 address, for the default gateway address.
- A stateful DHCPv6 server to obtain a GUA, DNS server address, domain name and other necessary information.

610

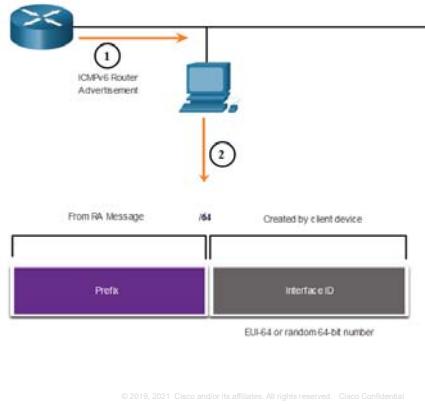

© 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 610

609

120

## Dynamic Addressing for IPv6 GUAs EUI-64 Process vs. Randomly Generated

- When the RA message is either SLAAC or SLAAC with stateless DHCPv6, the client must generate its own interface ID.
- The interface ID can be created using the EUI-64 process or a randomly generated 64-bit number.



## Dynamic Addressing for IPv6 GUAs EUI-64 Process

The IEEE defined the Extended Unique Identifier (EUI) or modified EUI-64 process which performs the following:

- A 16 bit value of fffe (in hexadecimal) is inserted into the middle of the 48-bit Ethernet MAC address of the client.
- The 7<sup>th</sup> bit of the client MAC address is reversed from binary 0 to 1.
- Example:

48-bit MAC	fc:99:47:75:ce:e0
EUI-64 Interface ID	<b>fe:99:47:ff:fe:75:ce:e0</b>

611

612

## Dynamic Addressing for IPv6 GUAs Randomly Generated Interface IDs

Depending upon the operating system, a device may use a randomly generated interface ID instead of using the MAC address and the EUI-64 process.

Beginning with Windows Vista, Windows uses a randomly generated interface ID instead of one created with EUI-64.

```
C:\> ipconfig
Windows IP Configuration
Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection:
Connection-specific DNS Suffix . :
IPv6 Address . . . . . : 2001:db8:acad:1:50a5:8a35:a5bb:66e1
Link-local IPv6 Address . . . . : fe80::50a5:8a35:a5bb:66e1
Default Gateway . . . . . : fe80::1
```

**Note:** To ensure the uniqueness of any IPv6 unicast address, the client may use a process known as Duplicate Address Detection (DAD). This is similar to an ARP request for its own address. If there is no reply, then the address is unique.

613

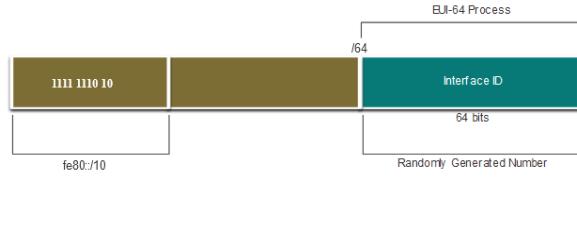
## 12.6 Dynamic Addressing for IPv6 LLAs

614

## Dynamic Addressing for IPv6 LLAs

### Dynamic LLAs

- All IPv6 interfaces must have an IPv6 LLA.
- Like IPv6 GUAs, LLAs can be configured dynamically.
- The figure shows the LLA is dynamically created using the fe80::/10 prefix and the interface ID using the EUI-64 process, or a randomly generated 64-bit number.



## Dynamic Addressing for IPv6 LLAs

### Dynamic LLAs on Windows

Operating systems, such as Windows, will typically use the same method for both a SLAAC-created GUA and a dynamically assigned LLA.

#### EUI-64 Generated Interface ID:

```
C:\> ipconfig
Windows IP Configuration
Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection:
Connection-specific DNS Suffix . :
IPv6 Address . . . . . : 2001:db8:acad:1:fc99:47ff:fe75:cee0
Link-local IPv6 Address . . . . . : fe80::fc99:47ff:fe75:cee0
Default Gateway . . . . . : fe80::1
C:\>
```

#### Random 64-bit Generated Interface ID:

```
C:\> ipconfig
Windows IP Configuration
Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection:
Connection-specific DNS Suffix . :
IPv6 Address . . . . . : 2001:db8:acad:1:50a5:8a35:a5bb:66e1
Link-local IPv6 Address . . . . . : fe80::50a5:8a35:a5bb:66e1
Default Gateway . . . . . : fe80::1
C:\>
```

615

616

## Dynamic Addressing for IPv6 LLAs

### Dynamic LLAs on Cisco Routers

Cisco routers automatically create an IPv6 LLA whenever a GUA is assigned to the interface. By default, Cisco IOS routers use EUI-64 to generate the interface ID for all LLAs on IPv6 interfaces.

Here is an example of a LLA dynamically configured on the G0/0/0 interface of R1:

```
R1# show interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0
GigabitEthernet0/0/0 is up, line protocol is up
Hardware is ISR4221-2x1GE, address is 7079.b392.3640 (bia 7079.b392.3640)
(Output omitted)
R1# show ipv6 interface brief
GigabitEthernet0/0/0 [up/up]
FE80::7279:B3FF:FE92:3640
2001:DB8:ACAD:1::1
```

617

## Dynamic Addressing for IPv6 LLAs

### Verify IPv6 Address Configuration

Cisco routers automatically create an IPv6 LLA whenever a GUA is assigned to the interface. By default, Cisco IOS routers use EUI-64 to generate the interface ID for all LLAs on IPv6 interfaces.

Here is an example of a LLA dynamically configured on the G0/0/0 interface of R1:

```
R1# show interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0
GigabitEthernet0/0/0 is up, line protocol is up
Hardware is ISR4221-2x1GE, address is 7079.b392.3640 (bia 7079.b392.3640)
(Output omitted)
R1# show ipv6 interface brief
GigabitEthernet0/0/0 [up/up]
FE80::7279:B3FF:FE92:3640
2001:DB8:ACAD:1::1
```

618

618

## Module Practice and Quiz

### Packet Tracer – Configure IPv6 Addressing

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Configure IPv6 Addressing on the router
- Configure IPv6 Addressing on the servers
- Configure IPv6 Addressing on the clients
- Test and verify network connectivity



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

619

## 12.7 IPv6 Multicast Addresses



© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

620

619

620

### IPv6 Multicast Addresses

#### Assigned IPv6 Multicast Addresses

IPv6 multicast addresses have the prefix ff00::/8. There are two types of IPv6 multicast addresses:

- Well-Known multicast addresses
- Solicited node multicast addresses

**Note:** Multicast addresses can only be destination addresses and not source addresses.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

621

### IPv6 Multicast Addresses

#### Well-Known IPv6 Multicast Addresses

Well-known IPv6 multicast addresses are assigned and are reserved for predefined groups of devices.

There are two common IPv6 Assigned multicast groups:

- **ff02::1 All-nodes multicast group** - This is a multicast group that all IPv6-enabled devices join. A packet sent to this group is received and processed by all IPv6 interfaces on the link or network.
- **ff02::2 All-routers multicast group** - This is a multicast group that all IPv6 routers join. A router becomes a member of this group when it is enabled as an IPv6 router with the **ipv6 unicast-routing** global configuration command.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

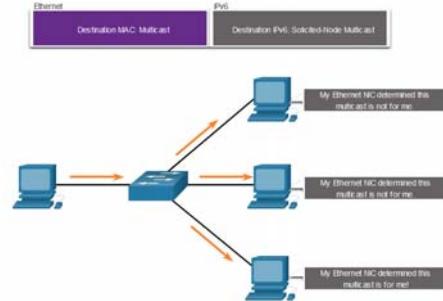
622

621

622

## IPv6 Multicast Addresses Solicited-Node IPv6 Multicast

- A solicited-node multicast address is similar to the all-nodes multicast address.
- A solicited-node multicast address is mapped to a special Ethernet multicast address.
- The Ethernet NIC can filter the frame by examining the destination MAC address without sending it to the IPv6 process to see if the device is the intended target of the IPv6 packet.



cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 623

## Module Practice and Quiz Lab – Identify IPv6 Addresses

In this lab, you complete the following objectives:

- Identify the Different Types of IPv6 Addresses
- Examine a Host IPv6 Network Interface and Address
- Practice IPv6 Address Abbreviation

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 624

624

## 12.8 Subnet an IPv6 Network

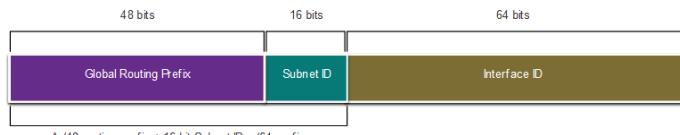
cisco

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 625

## Subnet an IPv6 Network Subnet Using the Subnet ID

IPv6 was designed with subnetting in mind.

- A separate subnet ID field in the IPv6 GUA is used to create subnets.
- The subnet ID field is the area between the Global Routing Prefix and the interface ID.



cisco

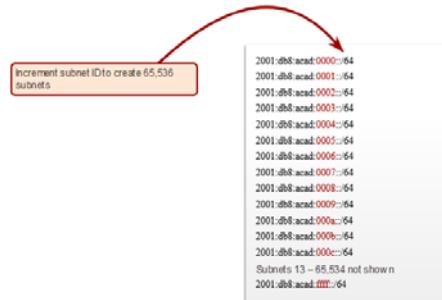
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 626

626

## Subnet an IPv6 Network IPv6 Subnetting Example

Given the 2001:db8:acad::/48 global routing prefix with a 16 bit subnet ID.

- Allows 65,536 /64 subnets
- The global routing prefix is the same for all subnets.
- Only the subnet ID hexet is incremented in hexadecimal for each subnet.

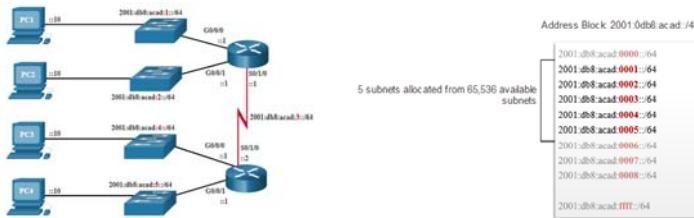


627

## Subnet an IPv6 Network IPv6 Subnet Allocation

The example topology requires five subnets, one for each LAN as well as for the serial link between R1 and R2.

The five IPv6 subnets were allocated, with the subnet ID field 0001 through 0005. Each /64 subnet will provide more addresses than will ever be needed.



628

## Subnet an IPv6 Network Router Configured with IPv6 Subnets

The example shows that each of the router interfaces on R1 has been configured to be on a different IPv6 subnet.

```
R1(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/0/0
R1(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:db8:acad:1::1/64
R1(config-if)# no shutdown
R1(config-if)# exit
R1(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/0/1
R1(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:db8:acad:2::1/64
R1(config-if)# no shutdown
R1(config-if)# exit
R1(config)# interface serial 0/1/0
R1(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:db8:acad:3::1/64
R1(config-if)# no shutdown
```

629

## 2.9 Module Practice and Quiz

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 630

630

### Module Practice and Quiz

## Packet Tracer – Implement a Subnetted IPv6 Addressing Scheme

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Determine IPv6 subnets and addressing scheme
- Configure IPv6 addressing on routers and PCs
- Verify IPv6 connectivity


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
631

### Packet Tracer - Configure IPv6 Addresses on Network Devices -

#### Physical Mode

#### Lab – Configure IPv6 Addresses on Network Devices

In this Packet Tracer activity, you will complete the following objectives:

- Set Up the Network Topology
- Configure PC Hosts
- Configure and Verify Basic Switch Settings

In this Lab, you complete the following objectives:

- Set up the topology and configure basic router and switch settings
- Configure IPv6 addresses manually
- Verify end-to-end connectivity


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
632

631

### Module Practice and Quiz

## What did I learn in this module?

- IPv4 has a theoretical maximum of 4.3 billion addresses.
- The IETF has created various protocols and tools to help network administrators migrate their networks to IPv6. The migration techniques can be divided into three categories: dual stack, tunneling, and translation.
- IPv6 addresses are 128 bits in length and written as a string of hexadecimal values.
- The preferred format for writing an IPv6 address is x:x:x:x:x:x:x:x, with each “x” consisting of four hexadecimal values.
- There are three types of IPv6 addresses: unicast, multicast, and anycast.
- An IPv6 unicast address uniquely identifies an interface on an IPv6-enabled device.
- IPv6 global unicast addresses (GUAs) are globally unique and routable on the IPv6 internet.
- An IPv6 link-local address (LLA) enables a device to communicate with other IPv6-enabled devices on the same link and only on that link (subnet).
- The command to configure an IPv6 GUA on an interface is **ipv6 address ipv6-address/prefix-length**.
- A device obtains a GUA dynamically through ICMPv6 messages. IPv6 routers periodically send out ICMPv6 RA messages, every 200 seconds, to all IPv6-enabled devices on the network.


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
633

### Module Practice and Quiz

## What did I learn in this module? (Cont.)

- RA messages have three methods: SLAAC, SLAAC with a stateless DHCPv6 server, and stateful DHCPv6 (no SLAAC).
- The interface ID can be created using the EUI-64 process or a randomly generated 64-bit number.
- The EUIs process uses the 48-bit Ethernet MAC address of the client and inserts another 16 bits in the middle of MAC address to create a 64-bit interface ID.
- Depending upon the operating system, a device may use a randomly generated interface ID.
- All IPv6 devices must have an IPv6 LLA. An LLA can be configured manually or created dynamically.
- Cisco routers automatically create an IPv6 LLA whenever a GUA is assigned to the interface.
- There are two types of IPv6 multicast addresses: well-known multicast addresses and solicited node multicast addresses.
- Two commonIPv6 assigned multicast groups are: ff02::1 All-nodes multicast group and ff02::2 All-routers multicast group.
- A solicited-node multicast address is similar to the all-nodes multicast address. The advantage of a solicited-node multicast address is that it is mapped to a special Ethernet multicast address.
- IPv6 was designed with subnetting in mind. A separate subnet ID field in the IPv6 GUA is used to create subnets.


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
634

633

634

## Module 12: WLAN Concepts

## New Terms and Commands

- Hextet
- Link-local address (LLA)
- ipv6 address
- show ipv6 interface brief
- SLAAC
- Router advertisement
- Router solicitation
- EUI-64
- Solicited node multicast

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

635



cisco

## Module 13: ICMP

## Instructor Materials

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)

636

635

cisco

## Module 13: ICMP

Introduction of Networks v7.0  
(ITN)

## Module Objectives

## Module Title: ICMP

**Module Objective:** Use various tools to test network connectivity.

Topic Title	Topic Objective
ICMP Messages	Explain how ICMP is used to test network connectivity.
Ping and Traceroute Testing	Use ping and traceroute utilities to test network connectivity.

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

646

646

645

# 13.1 ICMP Messages

647

## ICMP Messages

### ICMPv4 and ICMPv6 Messages

- Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) provides feedback about issues related to the processing of IP packets under certain conditions.
- ICMPv4 is the messaging protocol for IPv4. ICMPv6 is the messaging protocol for IPv6 and includes additional functionality.
- The ICMP messages common to both ICMPv4 and ICMPv6 include:
  - Host reachability
  - Destination or Service Unreachable
  - Time exceeded

Note: ICMPv4 messages are not required and are often not allowed within a network for security reasons.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 648

648

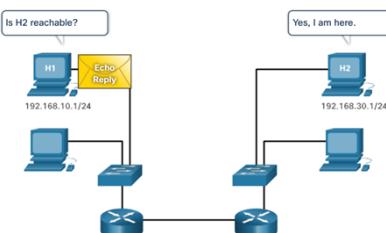
## ICMP Messages

### Host Reachability

ICMP Echo Message can be used to test the reachability of a host on an IP network.

In the example:

- The local host sends an ICMP Echo Request to a host.
- If the host is available, the destination host responds with an Echo Reply.



649

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 649

## ICMP Messages

### Destination or Service Unreachable

- An ICMP Destination Unreachable message can be used to notify the source that a destination or service is unreachable.
- The ICMP message will include a code indicating why the packet could not be delivered.

#### A few Destination Unreachable codes for ICMPv4 are as follows:

- 0 - Net unreachable
- 1 - Host unreachable
- 2 - Protocol unreachable
- 3 - Port unreachable

#### A few Destination Unreachable codes for ICMPv6 are as follows:

- 0 - No route to destination
- 1 - Communication with the destination is administratively prohibited (e.g., firewall)
- 2 - Beyond scope of the source address
- 3 - Address unreachable
- 4 - Port unreachable

Note: ICMPv6 has similar but slightly different codes for Destination Unreachable messages.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 650

650

## ICMP Messages

### Time Exceeded

- When the Time to Live (TTL) field in a packet is decremented to 0, an ICMPv4 Time Exceeded message will be sent to the source host.
- ICMPv6 also sends a Time Exceeded message. Instead of the IPv4 TTL field, ICMPv6 uses the IPv6 Hop Limit field to determine if the packet has expired.

```
Pinging 8.8.8.8 with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 192.168.1.1: TTL expired in transit.

Ping statistics for 8.8.8.8:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
```

**Note:** Time Exceeded messages are used by the **traceroute** tool.


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 651

651

## ICMP Messages

### ICMPv6 Messages

ICMPv6 has new features and improved functionality not found in ICMPv4, including four new protocols as part of the Neighbor Discovery Protocol (ND or NDP).

Messaging between an IPv6 router and an IPv6 device, including dynamic address allocation are as follows:

- Router Solicitation (RS) message
- Router Advertisement (RA) message

Messaging between IPv6 devices, including duplicate address detection and address resolution are as follows:

- Neighbor Solicitation (NS) message
- Neighbor Advertisement (NA) message

**Note:** ICMPv6 ND also includes the redirect message, which has a similar function to the redirect message used in ICMPv4.

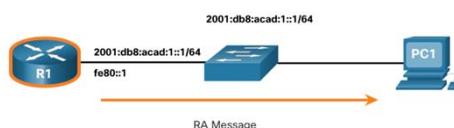

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 652

652

## ICMP Messages

### ICMPv6 Messages (Cont.)

- RA messages are sent by IPv6-enabled routers every 200 seconds to provide addressing information to IPv6-enabled hosts.
- RA message can include addressing information for the host such as the prefix, prefix length, DNS address, and domain name.
- A host using Stateless Address Autoconfiguration (SLAAC) will set its default gateway to the link-local address of the router that sent the RA.

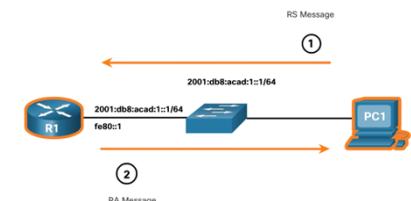

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 653

653

## ICMP Messages

### ICMPv6 Messages (Cont.)

- An IPv6-enabled router will also send out an RA message in response to an RS message.
- In the figure, PC1 sends a RS message to determine how to receive its IPv6 address information dynamically.
  - R1 replies to the RS with an RA message.
  - PC1 sends an RS message, "Hi, I just booted up. Is there an IPv6 router on the network? I need to know how to get my IPv6 address information dynamically."
  - R1 replies with an RA message. "Hi all IPv6-enabled devices, I'm R1 and you can use SLAAC to create an IPv6 global unicast address. The prefix is 2001:db8:acad:1::/64. By the way, use my link-local address fe80::1 as your default gateway."

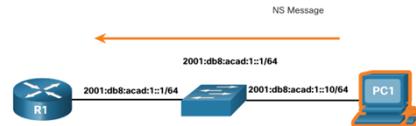

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 654

654

## ICMP Messages

## ICMPv6 Messages (Cont.)

- A device assigned a global IPv6 unicast or link-local unicast address, may perform duplicate address detection (DAD) to ensure that the IPv6 address is unique.
- To check the uniqueness of an address, the device will send an NS message with its own IPv6 address as the targeted IPv6 address.
- If another device on the network has this address, it will respond with an NA message notifying to the sending device that the address is in use.



**Note:** DAD is not required, but RFC 4861 recommends that DAD is performed on unicast addresses.



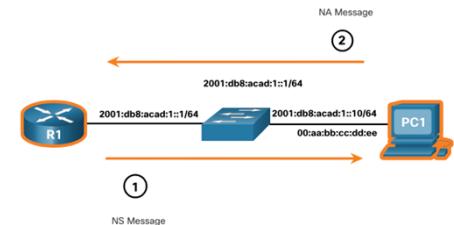
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

655

## ICMP Messages

## ICMPv6 Messages (Cont.)

- To determine the MAC address for the destination, the device will send an NS message to the solicited node address.
- The message will include the known (targeted) IPv6 address. The device that has the targeted IPv6 address will respond with an NA message containing its Ethernet MAC address.
- In the figure, R1 sends a NS message to 2001:db8:acad:1::10 asking for its MAC address.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

656

655

## 13.2 Ping and Traceroute Tests



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

657

## Ping and Traceroute Tests

## Ping – Test Connectivity

- The ping command is an IPv4 and IPv6 testing utility that uses ICMP echo request and echo reply messages to test connectivity between hosts and provides a summary that includes the success rate and average round-trip time to the destination.
- If a reply is not received within the timeout, ping provides a message indicating that a response was not received.
- It is common for the first ping to timeout if address resolution (ARP or ND) needs to be performed before sending the ICMP Echo Request.

```
Si#ping 192.168.20.2
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 192.168.20.2, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!!
Success rate is 80 percent (4/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 0/0/1 ms
```

```
Ri#ping 2001:db8:acad:1::2
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 2001:db8:acad:1::2, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 0/0/1 ms
```

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

658

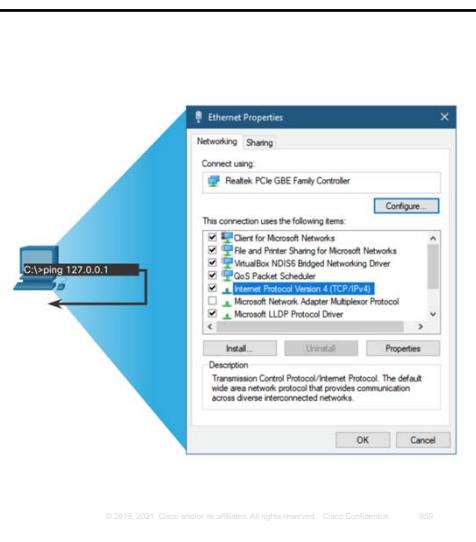
658

## Ping and Traceroute Tests

### Ping the Loopback

Ping can be used to test the internal configuration of IPv4 or IPv6 on the local host. To do this, **ping** the local loopback address of 127.0.0.1 for IPv4 (::1 for IPv6).

- A response from 127.0.0.1 for IPv4, or ::1 for IPv6, indicates that IP is properly installed on the host.
- An error message indicates that TCP/IP is not operational on the host.



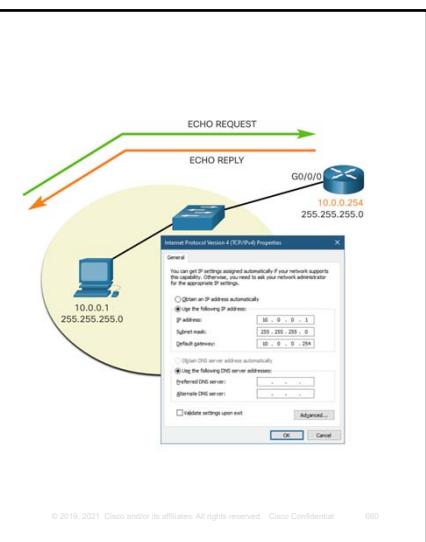
## Ping and Traceroute Tests

### Ping the Default Gateway

The **ping** command can be used to test the ability of a host to communicate on the local network.

The default gateway address is most often used because the router is normally always operational.

- A successful **ping** to the default gateway indicates that the host and the router interface serving as the default gateway are both operational on the local network.
- If the default gateway address does not respond, a **ping** can be sent to the IP address of another host on the local network that is known to be operational.



659

660

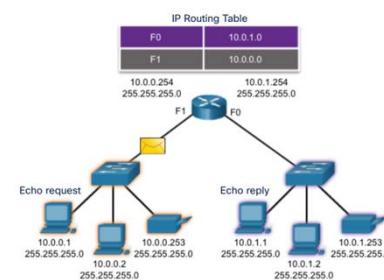
## Ping and Traceroute Tests

### Ping a Remote Host

Ping can also be used to test the ability of a local host to communicate across an internetwork.

A local host can ping a host on a remote network. A successful **ping** across the internetwork confirms communication on the local network.

**Note:** Many network administrators limit or prohibit the entry of ICMP messages therefore, the lack of a **ping** response could be due to security restrictions.



661

```
R1#traceroute 192.168.40.2
Type escape sequence to abort.
Tracing the route to 192.168.40.2
  1  192.168.10.2    1 msec  0 msec  0 msec
  2  192.168.20.2    2 msec  1 msec  0 msec
  3  192.168.30.2    1 msec  0 msec  0 msec
  4  192.168.40.2    0 msec  0 msec  0 msec
```

**Note:** Traceroute makes use of a function of the TTL field in IPv4 and the Hop Limit field in IPv6 in the Layer 3 headers, along with the ICMP Time Exceeded message.

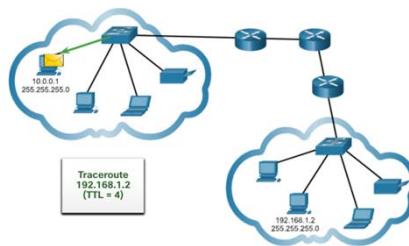
662

662

## Ping and Traceroute Tests

### Traceroute – Test the Path (Cont.)

- The first message sent from traceroute will have a TTL field value of 1. This causes the TTL to time out at the first router. This router then responds with a ICMPv4 Time Exceeded message.
- Traceroute then progressively increments the TTL field (2, 3, 4...) for each sequence of messages. This provides the trace with the address of each hop as the packets time out further down the path.
- The TTL field continues to be increased until the destination is reached, or it is incremented to a predefined maximum.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 663

## Ping and Traceroute Tests

### Packet Tracer – Verify IPv4 and IPv6 Addressing

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Complete the Addressing Table Documentation
- Test Connectivity Using Ping
- Discover the Path by Tracing the Route

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 664

663

664

## Ping and Traceroute Tests

### Packet Tracer – Use Ping and Traceroute to Test Network Connectivity

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Test and Restore IPv4 Connectivity
- Test and Restore IPv6 Connectivity

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 665

## 13.3 Module Practice and Quiz

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 666

665

666

**Module Practice and Quiz****Packet Tracer – Use ICMP to Test and Correct Network Connectivity**

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Use ICMP to locate connectivity issues.
- Configure network devices to correct connectivity issues.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 667

**Module Practice and Quiz****Packet Tracer - Use Ping and Traceroute to Test Network Connectivity - Physical Mode****Lab – Use Ping and Traceroute to Test Network Connectivity**

In this Packet Tracer Physical Mode activity, you will complete the following objectives:

- Use Ping Command for Basic Network Testing
- Use Tracert and Traceroute Commands for Basic Network Testing
- Troubleshoot the Topology

In this Lab, you complete the following objectives:

- Build and Configure the Network
- Use Ping Command for Basic Network Testing
- Use Tracert and Traceroute Commands for Basic Network Testing
- Troubleshoot the Topology



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 668

667

**Module Practice and Quiz****What did I learn in this module?**

- The purpose of ICMP messages is to provide feedback about issues related to the processing of IP packets under certain conditions.
- The ICMP messages common to both ICMPv4 and ICMPv6 are: Host unreachable, Destination or Service Unreachable, and Time exceeded.
- The messages between an IPv6 router and an IPv6 device including dynamic address allocation include RS and RA. The messages between IPv6 devices include the redirect (similar to IPv4), NS and NA.
- Ping (used by IPv4 and IPv6) uses ICMP echo request and echo reply messages to test connectivity between hosts.
- Ping can be used to test the internal configuration of IPv4 or IPv6 on the local host.
- Traceroute (tracert) generates a list of hops that were successfully reached along the path.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 669

**Module 13 : ICMP****New Terms and Commands**

- ICMP
- ICMPv4
- ICMPv6
- ping
- traceroute
- tracert
- Network Discovery Protocol
- Router Solicitation (RS)
- Router Advertisement (RA)
- Neighbor Solicitation (NS)
- Neighbor Advertisement (NA)
- TTL



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 670

669

670



**Module 14: Transport Layer**

Instructor Materials

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)

A blue background featuring a white brain icon connected by a cable to a lightbulb, symbolizing knowledge and ideas.

671

## What to Expect in this Module

- To facilitate learning, the following features within the GUI may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Animations	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Videos	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Check Your Understanding(CYU)	Per topic online quiz to help learners gauge content understanding.
Interactive Activities	A variety of formats to help learners gauge content understanding.
Syntax Checker	Small simulations that expose learners to Cisco command line to practice configuration skills.
PT Activity	Simulation and modeling activities designed to explore, acquire, reinforce, and expand skills.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 673

673



**What to Expect in this Module (Cont.)**

- To facilitate learning, the following features may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Hands-On Labs	Labs designed for working with physical equipment.
Class Activities	These are found on the Instructor Resources page. Class Activities are designed to facilitate learning, class discussion, and collaboration.
Module Quizzes	Self-assessments that integrate concepts and skills learned throughout the series of topics presented in the module.
Module Summary	Briefly recaps module content.

674



**Module 14: Transport Layer**

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)

A blue background featuring a white brain icon connected by a cable to a lightbulb, symbolizing knowledge and ideas.

680

## Module Objectives

**Module Title:** Transport Layer

**Module Objective:** Compare the operations of transport layer protocols in supporting end-to-end communication.

Topic Title	Topic Objective
Transportation of Data	Explain the purpose of the transport layer in managing the transportation of data in end-to-end communication.
TCP Overview	Explain characteristics of TCP.
UDP Overview	Explain characteristics of UDP.
Port Numbers	Explain how TCP and UDP use port numbers.
TCP Communication Process	Explain how TCP session establishment and termination processes facilitate reliable communication.
Reliability and Flow Control	Explain how TCP protocol data units are transmitted and acknowledged to guarantee delivery.
UDP Communication	Compare the operations of transport layer protocols in supporting end-to-end communication.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 681

## 14.1 Transportation of Data



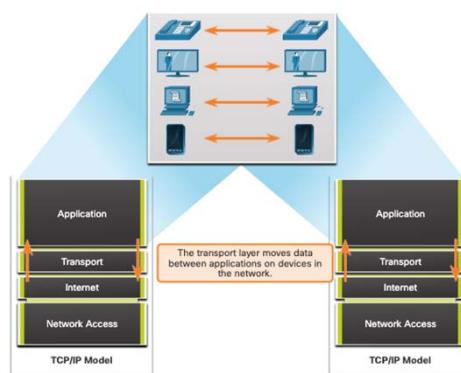
© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 682

681

### Transportation of Data Role of the Transport Layer

The transport layer is:

- responsible for logical communications between applications running on different hosts.
- The link between the application layer and the lower layers that are responsible for network transmission.



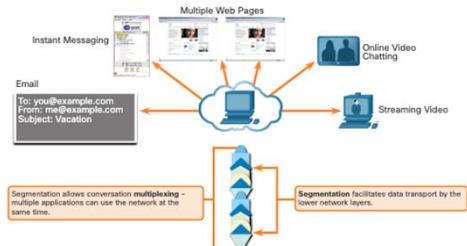
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 683

682

### Transportation of Data Transport Layer Responsibilities

The transport layer has the following responsibilities:

- Tracking individual conversations
- Segmenting data and reassembling segments
- Adds header information
- Identify, separate, and manage multiple conversations
- Uses segmentation and multiplexing to enable different communication conversations to be interleaved on the same network



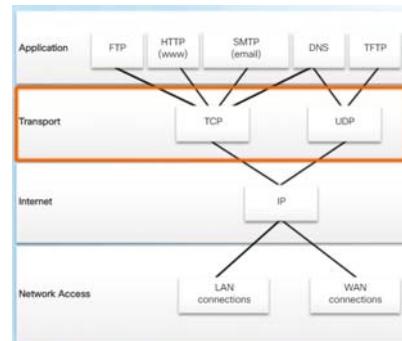
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 684

683

684

## Transportation of Data Transport Layer Protocols

- IP does not specify how the delivery or transportation of the packets takes place.
- Transport layer protocols specify how to transfer messages between hosts, and are responsible for managing reliability requirements of a conversation.
- The transport layer includes the TCP and UDP protocols.



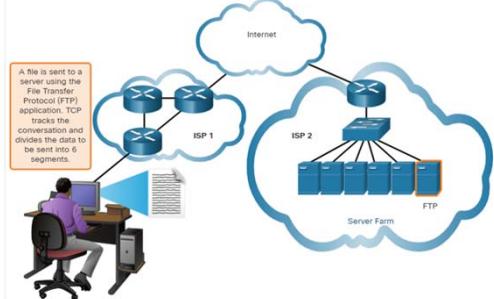
CISCO

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 685

## Transportation of Data Transmission Control Protocol

TCP provides reliability and flow control. TCP basic operations:

- Number and track data segments transmitted to a specific host from a specific application
- Acknowledge received data
- Retransmit any unacknowledged data after a certain amount of time
- Sequence data that might arrive in wrong order
- Send data at an efficient rate that is acceptable by the receiver



CISCO

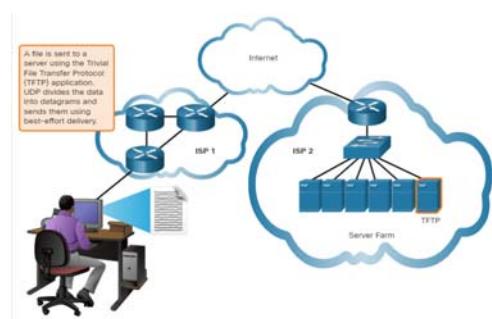
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 686

685

## Transportation of Data User Datagram Protocol (UDP)

UDP provides the basic functions for delivering datagrams between the appropriate applications, with very little overhead and data checking.

- UDP is a connectionless protocol.
- UDP is known as a best-effort delivery protocol because there is no acknowledgment that the data is received at the destination.



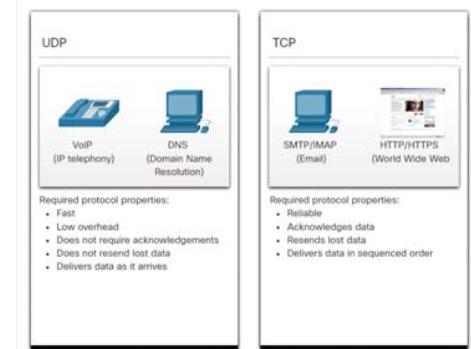
CISCO

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 687

## Transportation of Data The Right Transport Layer Protocol for the Right Application

UDP is also used by request-and-reply applications where the data is minimal, and retransmission can be done quickly.

If it is important that all the data arrives and that it can be processed in its proper sequence, TCP is used as the transport protocol.



CISCO

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 688

687

688

## 14.2 TCP Overview

689

### TCP Overview

#### TCP Features

- **Establishes a Session** - TCP is a connection-oriented protocol that negotiates and establishes a permanent connection (or session) between source and destination devices prior to forwarding any traffic.
- **Ensures Reliable Delivery** - For many reasons, it is possible for a segment to become corrupted or lost completely, as it is transmitted over the network. TCP ensures that each segment that is sent by the source arrives at the destination.
- **Provides Same-Order Delivery** - Because networks may provide multiple routes that can have different transmission rates, data can arrive in the wrong order.
- **Supports Flow Control** - Network hosts have limited resources (i.e., memory and processing power). When TCP is aware that these resources are overtaxed, it can request that the sending application reduce the rate of data flow.

690

### TCP Overview

#### TCP Header Fields

TCP Header Field	Description
Source Port	A 16-bit field used to identify the source application by port number.
Destination Port	A 16-bit field used to identify the destination application by port number.
Sequence Number	A 32-bit field used for data reassembly purposes.
Acknowledgment Number	A 32-bit field used to indicate that data has been received and the next byte expected from the source.
Header Length	A 4-bit field known as "data offset" that indicates the length of the TCP segment header.
Reserved	A 6-bit field that is reserved for future use.
Control bits	A 6-bit field used that includes bit codes, or flags, which indicate the purpose and function of the TCP segment.
Window size	A 16-bit field used to indicate the number of bytes that can be accepted at one time.
Checksum	A 16-bit field used for error checking of the segment header and data.
Urgent	A 16-bit field used to indicate if the contained data is urgent.

692

### TCP Overview

#### TCP Header

TCP is a stateful protocol which means it keeps track of the state of the communication session.

TCP records which information it has sent, and which information has been acknowledged.

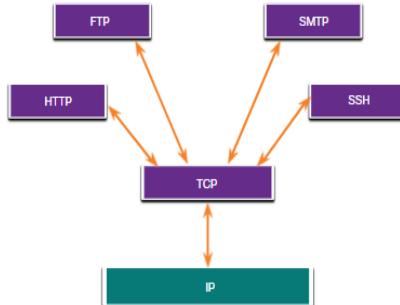


691

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 691

**TCP Overview****Applications that use TCP**

TCP handles all tasks associated with dividing the data stream into segments, providing reliability, controlling data flow, and reordering segments.



cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 693

**14.3 UDP Overview**

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 694

694

**UDP Overview****UDP Features**

UDP features include the following:

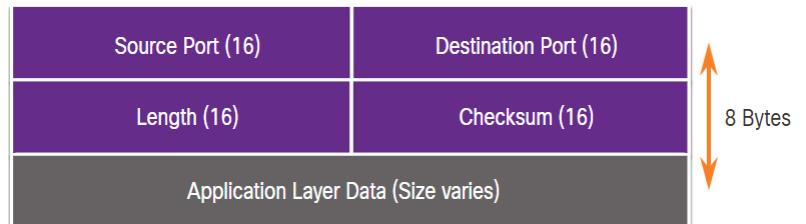
- Data is reconstructed in the order that it is received.
- Any segments that are lost are not resent.
- There is no session establishment.
- The sending is not informed about resource availability.

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 695

**UDP Overview****UDP Header**

The UDP header is far simpler than the TCP header because it only has four fields and requires 8 bytes (i.e. 64 bits).



cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 696

696

**UDP Overview****UDP Header Fields**

The table identifies and describes the four fields in a UDP header.

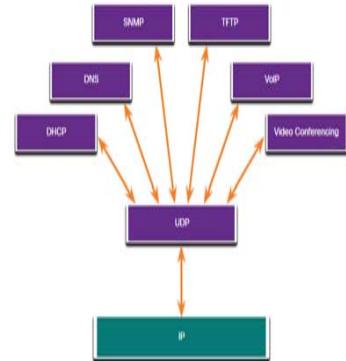
UDP Header Field	Description
Source Port	A 16-bit field used to identify the source application by port number.
Destination Port	A 16-bit field used to identify the destination application by port number.
Length	A 16-bit field that indicates the length of the UDP datagram header and data.
Checksum	A 16-bit field used for error checking of the datagram header and data.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 697

**UDP Overview****Applications that use UDP**

- Live video and multimedia applications - These applications can tolerate some data loss but require little or no delay. Examples include VoIP and live streaming video.
- Simple request and reply applications - Applications with simple transactions where a host sends a request and may or may not receive a reply. Examples include DNS and DHCP.
- Applications that handle reliability themselves - Unidirectional communications where flow control, error detection, acknowledgments, and error recovery is not required, or can be handled by the application. Examples include SNMP and TFTP.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 698

698

## 14.4 Port Numbers



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 699

**Port Numbers****Multiple Separate Communications**

TCP and UDP transport layer protocols use port numbers to manage multiple, simultaneous conversations.

The source port number is associated with the originating application on the local host whereas the destination port number is associated with the destination application on the remote host.

Source Port (16)

Destination Port (16)

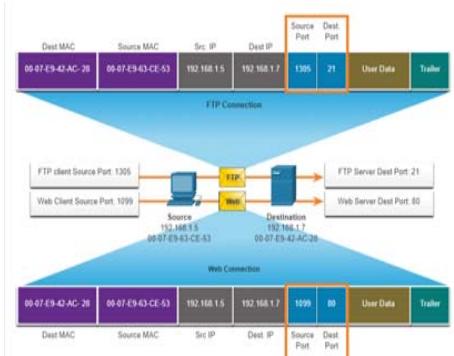


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 700

700

## Port numbers Socket Pairs

- The source and destination ports are placed within the segment.
- The segments are then encapsulated within an IP packet.
- The combination of the source IP address and source port number, or the destination IP address and destination port number is known as a socket.
- Sockets enable multiple processes, running on a client, to distinguish themselves from each other, and multiple connections to a server process to be distinguished from each other.



cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

701

## Port Numbers Port Number Groups

Port Group	Number Range	Description
Well-known Ports	0 to 1,023	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>These port numbers are reserved for common or popular services and applications such as web browsers, email clients, and remote access clients.</li> <li>Defined well-known ports for common server applications enables clients to easily identify the associated service required.</li> </ul>
Registered Ports	1,024 to 49,151	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>These port numbers are assigned by IANA to a requesting entity to use with specific processes or applications.</li> <li>These processes are primarily individual applications that a user has chosen to install, rather than common applications that would receive a well-known port number.</li> <li>For example, Cisco has registered port 1812 for its RADIUS server authentication process.</li> </ul>
Private and/or Dynamic Ports	49,152 to 65,535	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>These ports are also known as <i>ephemeral ports</i>.</li> <li>The client's OS usually assigns port numbers dynamically when a connection to a service is initiated.</li> <li>The dynamic port is then used to identify the client application during communication.</li> </ul>

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

702

701

702

## Port Numbers Port Number Groups (Cont.)

### Well-Known Port Numbers

Port Number	Protocol	Application
20	TCP	File Transfer Protocol (FTP) - Data
21	TCP	File Transfer Protocol (FTP) - Control
22	TCP	Secure Shell (SSH)
23	TCP	Telnet
25	TCP	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP)
53	UDP, TCP	Domain Name Service (DNS)
67	UDP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) - Server
68	UDP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol - Client
69	UDP	Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP)
80	TCP	Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)
110	TCP	Post Office Protocol version 3 (POP3)
143	TCP	Internet Message Access Protocol (IMAP)
161	UDP	Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)
443	TCP	Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS)

703

## Port Numbers The netstat Command

Unexplained TCP connections can pose a major security threat. Netstat is an important tool to verify connections.

```
C:\> netstat
Active Connections
Proto Local Address          Foreign Address        State
TCP   192.168.1.124:3126    192.168.0.2:netbios-ssn ESTABLISHED
TCP   192.168.1.124:3158    207.138.126.152:http  ESTABLISHED
TCP   192.168.1.124:3159    207.138.126.169:http  ESTABLISHED
TCP   192.168.1.124:3160    207.138.126.169:http  ESTABLISHED
TCP   192.168.1.124:3161    sc.msn.com:http      ESTABLISHED
TCP   192.168.1.124:3166    www.cisco.com:http    ESTABLISHED
```

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

704

703

704

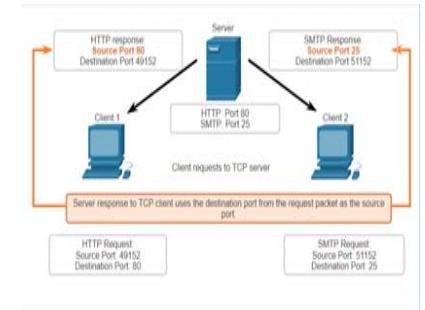
## 14.5 TCP Communication Process

705

### TCP Communication Process TCP Server Processes

Each application process running on a server is configured to use a port number.

- An individual server cannot have two services assigned to the same port number within the same transport layer services.
- An active server application assigned to a specific port is considered open, which means that the transport layer accepts, and processes segments addressed to that port.
- Any incoming client request addressed to the correct socket is accepted, and the data is passed to the server application.

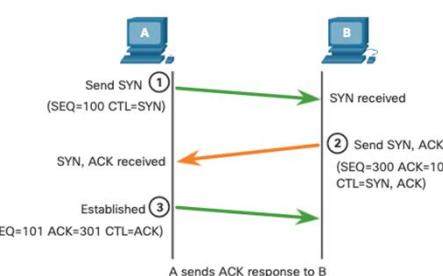


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 705

706

### TCP Communication Process TCP Connection Establishment

Step 1: The initiating client requests a client-to-server communication session with the server.



Step 2: The server acknowledges the client-to-server communication session and requests a server-to-client communication session.

Step 3: The initiating client acknowledges the server-to-client communication session.

707

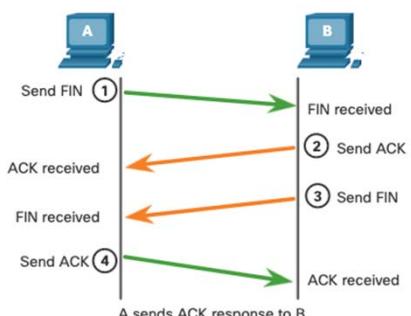
### TCP Communication Process Session Termination

Step 1: When the client has no more data to send in the stream, it sends a segment with the FIN flag set.

Step 2: The server sends an ACK to acknowledge the receipt of the FIN to terminate the session from client to server.

Step 3: The server sends a FIN to the client to terminate the server-to-client session.

Step 4: The client responds with an ACK to acknowledge the FIN from the server.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 708

708

## TCP Communication Process

### TCP Three-Way Handshake Analysis

#### Functions of the Three-Way Handshake:

- It establishes that the destination device is present on the network.
- It verifies that the destination device has an active service and is accepting requests on the destination port number that the initiating client intends to use.
- It informs the destination device that the source client intends to establish a communication session on that port number.

After the communication is completed the sessions are closed, and the connection is terminated. The connection and session mechanisms enable TCP reliability function.



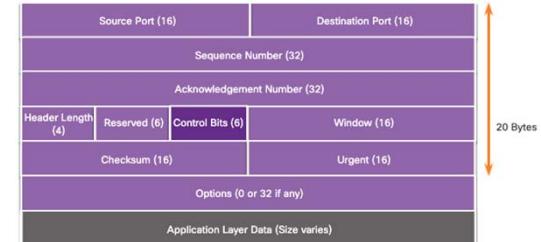
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 709

## TCP Communication Process

### TCP Three-Way Handshake Analysis (Cont.)

The six control bit flags are as follows:

- **URG** - Urgent pointer field significant
- **ACK** - Acknowledgment flag used in connection establishment and session termination
- **PSH** - Push function
- **RST** - Reset the connection when an error or timeout occurs
- **SYN** - Synchronize sequence numbers used in connection establishment
- **FIN** - No more data from sender and used in session termination



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 710

709

710

## TCP Communication Process

### Video TCP 3-Way Handshake

The video covers the following:

- TCP 3-Way Handshake
- Termination of a TCP conversation



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 711

## 14.6 Reliability and Flow Control



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 712

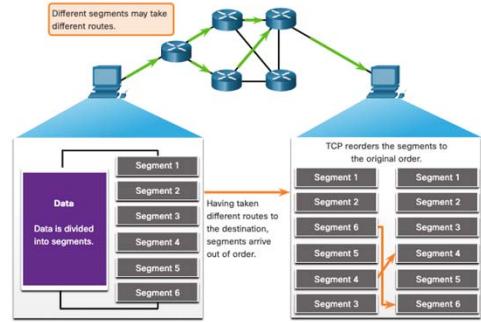
711

712

## Reliability and Flow Control

**TCP Reliability- Guaranteed and Ordered Delivery**

- TCP can also help maintain the flow of packets so that devices do not become overloaded.
- There may be times when TCP segments do not arrive at their destination or arrive out of order.
- All the data must be received and the data in these segments must be reassembled into the original order.
- Sequence numbers are assigned in the header of each packet to achieve this goal.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 713

713

## Reliability and Flow Control

**Video -TCP Reliability- Sequence Numbers and Acknowledgments**

This video depicts a simplified example of the TCP operations.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 714

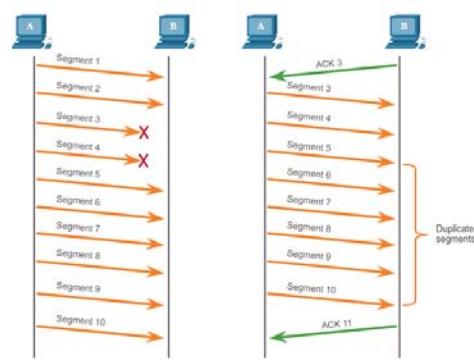
714

## Reliability and Flow Control

**TCP Reliability – Data Loss and Retransmission**

No matter how well designed a network is, data loss occasionally occurs.

TCP provides methods of managing these segment losses. Among these is a mechanism to retransmit segments for unacknowledged data.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 715

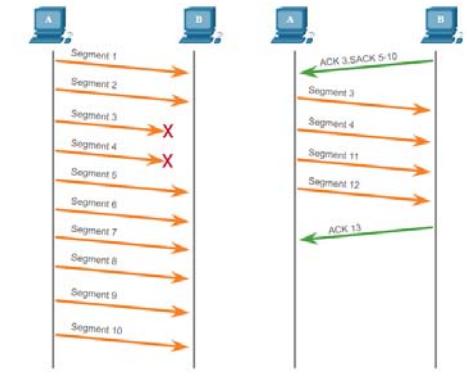
715

## Reliability and Flow Control

**TCP Reliability – Data Loss and Retransmission (Cont.)**

Host operating systems today typically employ an optional TCP feature called selective acknowledgment (SACK), negotiated during the three-way handshake.

If both hosts support SACK, the receiver can explicitly acknowledge which segments (bytes) were received including any discontinuous segments.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 716

716

## Reliability and Flow Control

### Video - TCP Reliability – Data Loss and Retransmission

This video shows the process of resending segments that are not initially received by the destination.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

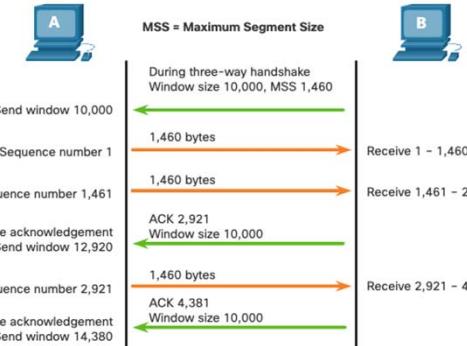
717

## Reliability and Flow Control

### TCP Flow Control – Window Size and Acknowledgments

TCP also provides mechanisms for flow control as follows:

- Flow control is the amount of data that the destination can receive and process reliably.
- Flow control helps maintain the reliability of TCP transmission by adjusting the rate of data flow between source and destination for a given session.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

718

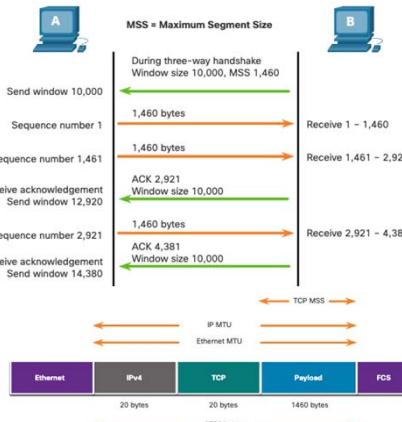
717

## Reliability and Flow Control

### TCP Flow Control – Maximum Segment Size

Maximum Segment Size (MSS) is the maximum amount of data that the destination device can receive.

- A common MSS is 1,460 bytes when using IPv4.
- A host determines the value of its MSS field by subtracting the IP and TCP headers from the Ethernet maximum transmission unit (MTU), which is 1500 bytes by default.
- 1500 minus 40 (20 bytes for the IPv4 header and 20 bytes for the TCP header) leaves 1460 bytes.



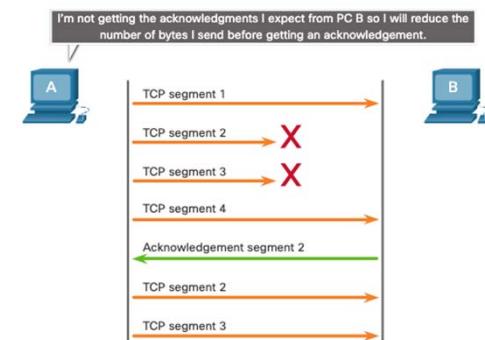
719

## Reliability and Flow Control

### TCP Flow Control – Congestion Avoidance

When congestion occurs on a network, it results in packets being discarded by the overloaded router.

To avoid and control congestion, TCP employs several congestion handling mechanisms, timers, and algorithms.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

720

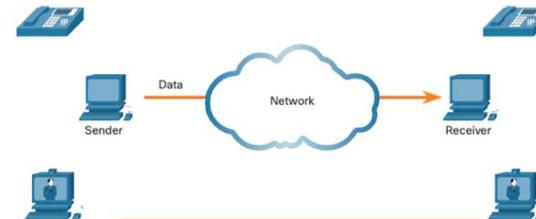
720

## 14.7 UDP Communication

721

### UDP Communication UDP Low Overhead versus Reliability

UDP does not establish a connection. UDP provides low overhead data transport because it has a small datagram header and no network management traffic.

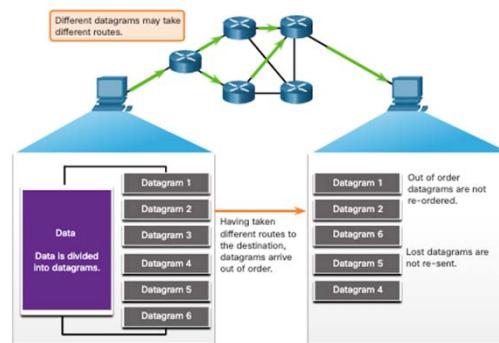


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 722

722

### UDP Communication UDP Datagram Reassembly

- UDP does not track sequence numbers the way TCP does.
- UDP has no way to reorder the datagrams into their transmission order.
- UDP simply reassembles the data in the order that it was received and forwards it to the application.



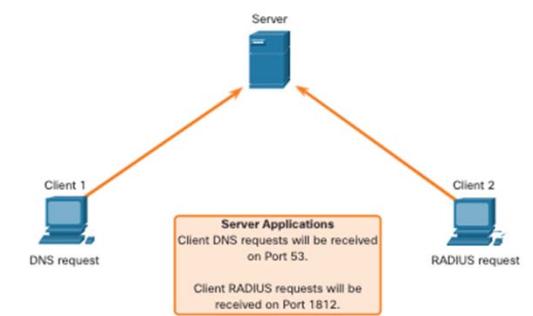
723

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 723

### UDP Communication UDP Server Processes and Requests

UDP-based server applications are assigned well-known or registered port numbers.

UDP receives a datagram destined for one of these ports, it forwards the application data to the appropriate application based on its port number.

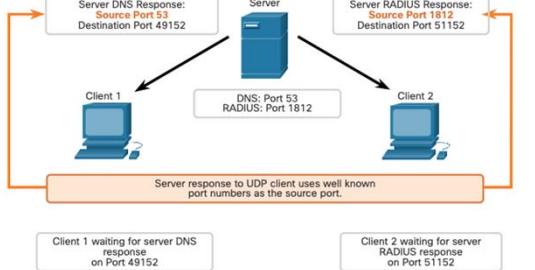


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 724

724

## UDP Communication UDP Client Processes

- The UDP client process dynamically selects a port number from the range of port numbers and uses this as the source port for the conversation.
- The destination port is usually the well-known or registered port number assigned to the server process.
- After a client has selected the source and destination ports, the same pair of ports are used in the header of all datagrams in the transaction.



725

## 14.8 Module Practice and Quiz

726

### Module Practice and Quiz Packet Tracer - TCP and UDP Communications

In this Packet Tracer, you will do the following:

- Generate Network Traffic in Simulation Mode.
- Examine the Functionality of the TCP and UDP Protocols.

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

727

### Module Practice and Quiz What did I learn in this module?

- The transport layer is the link between the application layer and the lower layers that are responsible for network transmission.
- The transport layer includes TCP and UDP.
- TCP establishes sessions, ensures reliability, provides same-order delivery, and supports flow control.
- UDP is a simple protocol that provides the basic transport layer functions.
- UDP reconstructs data in the order it is received, lost segments are not resent, no session establishment, and UDP does not inform the sender of resource availability.
- The TCP and UDP transport layer protocols use port numbers to manage multiple simultaneous conversations.
- Each application process running on a server is configured to use a port number.
- The port number is either automatically assigned or configured manually by a system administrator.
- For the original message to be understood by the recipient, all the data must be received and the data in these segments must be reassembled into the original order.

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

728

727

728

## Module Practice and Quiz

## What did I learn in this module (Cont.)?

- Sequence numbers are assigned in the header of each packet.
- Flow control helps maintain the reliability of TCP transmission by adjusting the rate of data flow between source and destination.
- A source might be transmitting 1,460 bytes of data within each TCP segment. This is the typical MSS that a destination device can receive.
- The process of the destination sending acknowledgments as it processes bytes received and the continual adjustment of the source's send window is known as sliding windows.
- To avoid and control congestion, TCP employs several congestion handling mechanisms.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

729

729

## Module 14: Transport Layer

## New Terms and Commands

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Conversation Multiplexing</li> <li>Segments</li> <li>Datagrams</li> <li>Connection-Oriented Protocol</li> <li>Connectionless Protocol</li> <li>Stateless Protocol</li> <li>Flow Control</li> <li>Same-Order Delivery</li> <li>Socket Pairs</li> <li>netstat</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Three-Way Handshake</li> <li>SYN</li> <li>ACK</li> <li>FIN</li> <li>URG</li> <li>PSH</li> <li>RST</li> <li>Initial Sequence Number (ISN)</li> <li>Selective Acknowledgement (SACK)</li> <li>Sliding Window</li> <li>Maximum Segment Size (MSS)</li> <li>Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU)</li> <li>Congestion Avoidance</li> </ul> |
|---|---|



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

730

730

**Module 15: Application Layer**

Instructor Materials

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)

731

**Module 15: Application Layer**

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)

740

## Module Objectives

- Module Title:** Application Layer
- Module Objective:** Explain the operation of application layer protocols in providing support to end-user applications.

Topic Title	Topic Objective
Application, Presentation, and Session	Explain how the functions of the application layer, presentation layer, and session layer work together to provide network services to end user applications.
Peer-to-Peer	Explain how end user applications operate in a peer-to-peer network.
Web and Email Protocols	Explain how web and email protocols operate.
IP Addressing Services	Explain how DNS and DHCP operate.
File Sharing Services	Explain how file transfer protocols operate.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 741

741

## 15.1 Application, Presentation, and Session



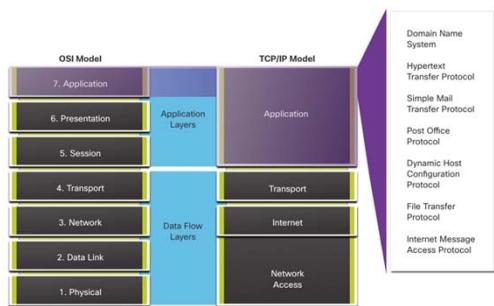
© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 742

742

### Application, Presentation, and Session

#### Application Layer

- The upper three layers of the OSI model (application, presentation, and session) define functions of the TCP/IP application layer.
- The application layer provides the interface between the applications used to communicate, and the underlying network over which messages are transmitted.
- Some of the most widely known application layer protocols include HTTP, FTP, TFTP, IMAP and DNS.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 743

743

### Application, Presentation, and Session

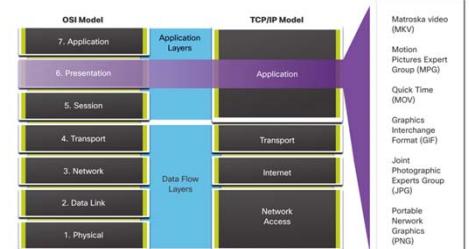
#### Presentation and Session Layer

The presentation layer has three primary functions:

- Formatting, or presenting, data at the source device into a compatible format for receipt by the destination device
- Compressing data in a way that can be decompressed by the destination device
- Encrypting data for transmission and decrypting data upon receipt

The session layer functions:

- It creates and maintains dialogs between source and destination applications.
- It handles the exchange of information to initiate dialogs, keep them active, and to restart sessions that are disrupted or idle for a long period of time.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 744

744

## Application, Presentation, and Session

### TCP/IP Application Layer Protocols

- The TCP/IP application protocols specify the format and control information necessary for many common internet communication functions.
- Application layer protocols are used by both the source and destination devices during a communication session.
- For the communications to be successful, the application layer protocols that are implemented on the source and destination host must be compatible.

#### Name System

##### DNS - Domain Name System (or Service)

- TCP, UDP client 53

- Translates domain names, such as cisco.com, into IP addresses.



#### Host Config

##### DHCP - Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol

- UDP client 68, server 67
- Dynamically assigns IP addresses to be re-used when no longer needed

#### Web

##### HTTP - Hypertext Transfer Protocol

- TCP 80, 8080
- A set of rules for exchanging text, graphic images, sound, video, and other multimedia files on the World Wide Web

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 745

## 15.2 Peer-to-Peer



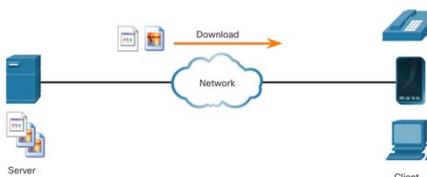
© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 746

745

### Peer-to-Peer

#### Client-Server Model

- Client and server processes are considered to be in the application layer.
- In the client/server model, the device requesting the information is called a client and the device responding to the request is called a server.
- Application layer protocols describe the format of the requests and responses between clients and servers.



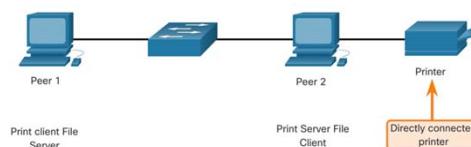
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 747

746

### Peer-to-Peer

#### Peer-to-Peer Networks

- In a peer-to-peer (P2P) network, two or more computers are connected via a network and can share resources (such as printers and files) without having a dedicated server.
- Every connected end device (known as a peer) can function as both a server and a client.
- One computer might assume the role of server for one transaction while simultaneously serving as a client for another. The roles of client and server are set on a per request basis.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 748

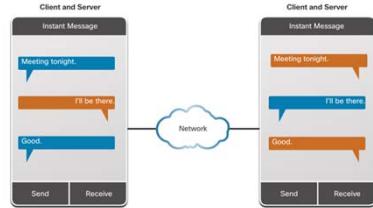
747

748

## Peer-to-Peer

### Peer-to-Peer Applications

- A P2P application allows a device to act as both a client and a server within the same communication.
- Some P2P applications use a hybrid system where each peer accesses an index server to get the location of a resource stored on another peer.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 749

749

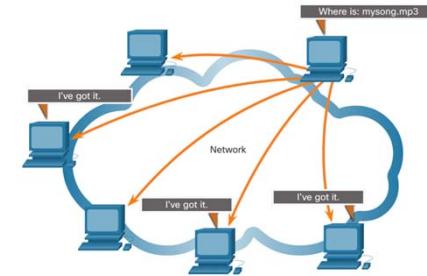
## Peer-to-Peer

### Common P2P Applications

With P2P applications, each computer in the network that is running the application can act as a client or a server for the other computers in the network that are also running the application.

Common P2P networks include the following:

- BitTorrent
- Direct Connect
- eDonkey
- Freenet



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 750

750

## 15.3 Web and Email Protocols

cisco

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 751

751

## Web and Email Protocols

### Hypertext Transfer Protocol and Hypertext Markup Language

When a web address or Uniform Resource Locator (URL) is typed into a web browser, the web browser establishes a connection to the web service. The web service is running on the server that is using the HTTP protocol.

To better understand how the web browser and web server interact, examine how a web page is opened in a browser.

#### Step 1

The browser interprets the three parts of the URL:

- http (the protocol or scheme)
- www.cisco.com (the server name)
- index.html (the specific filename requested)



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 752

752

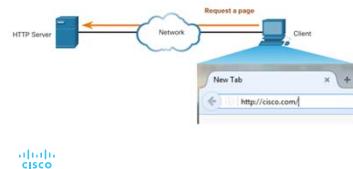
## Web and Email Protocols

### Hypertext Transfer Protocol and Hypertext Markup Language (Cont.)

#### Step 2

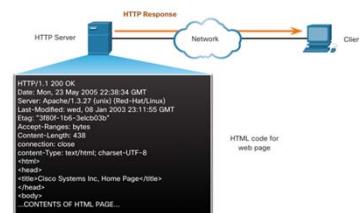
The browser then checks with a name server to convert www.cisco.com into a numeric IP address, which it uses to connect to the server.

The client initiates an HTTP request to a server by sending a GET request to the server and asks for the index.html file.



#### Step 3

In response to the request, the server sends the HTML code for this web page to the browser.

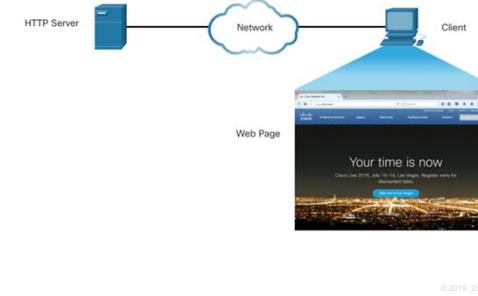


## Web and Email Protocols

### Hypertext Transfer Protocol and Hypertext Markup Language (Cont.)

#### Step 4

The browser deciphers the HTML code and formats the page for the browser window.



753

754

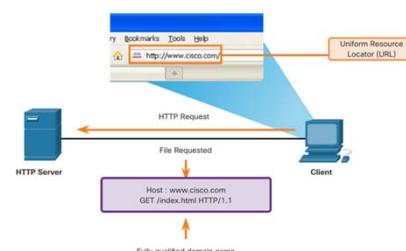
## Web and Email Protocols

### HTTP and HTTPS

HTTP is a request/response protocol that specifies the message types used for that communication.

The three common message types are GET, POST, and PUT:

- GET** - This is a client request for data. A client (web browser) sends the GET message to the web server to request HTML pages.
- POST** - This uploads data files to the web server, such as form data.
- PUT** - This uploads resources or content to the web server, such as an image.



**Note:** HTTP is not a secure protocol. For secure communications sent across the internet, HTTPS should be used.

Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

755

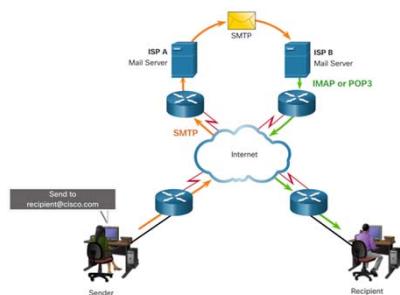
## Web and Email Protocols

### Email Protocols

Email is a store-and-forward method of sending, storing, and retrieving electronic messages across a network. Email messages are stored in databases on mail servers. Email clients communicate with mail servers to send and receive email.

The email protocols used for operation are:

- Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) – used to send mail.
- Post Office Protocol (POP) & IMAP – used for clients to receive mail.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

756

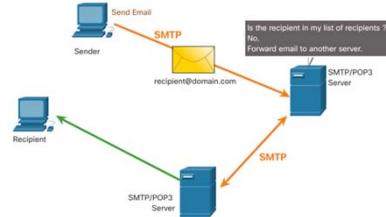
756

160

## Web and Email Protocols

### SMTP, POP and IMAP

- When a client sends email, the client SMTP process connects with a server SMTP process on well-known port 25.
- After the connection is made, the client attempts to send the email to the server across the connection.
- When the server receives the message, it either places the message in a local account, if the recipient is local, or forwards the message to another mail server for delivery.
- The destination email server may not be online or may be busy. If so, SMTP spools messages to be sent at a later time.



**Note:** SMTP message formats require a message header (recipient email address & sender email address) and a message body.

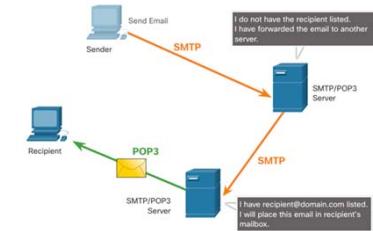
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 757

## Web and Email Protocols

### SMTP, POP and IMAP (Cont.)

POP is used by an application to retrieve mail from a mail server. When mail is downloaded from the server to the client using POP the messages are then deleted on the server.

- The server starts the POP service by passively listening on TCP port 110 for client connection requests.
- When a client wants to make use of the service, it sends a request to establish a TCP connection with the server.
- When the connection is established, the POP server sends a greeting.
- The client and POP server then exchange commands and responses until the connection is closed or aborted.



**Note:** Since POP does not store messages, it is not recommended for small businesses that need a centralized backup solution.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 758

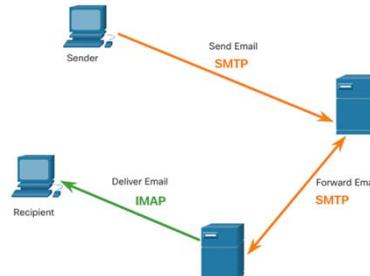
758

## Web and Email Protocols

### SMTP, POP and IMAP (Cont.)

IMAP is another protocol that describes a method to retrieve email messages.

- Unlike POP, when a user connects to an IMAP server, copies of the messages are downloaded to the client application. The original messages are kept on the server until manually deleted.
- When a user decides to delete a message, the server synchronizes that action and deletes the message from the server.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 759

## 15.4 IP Addressing Services

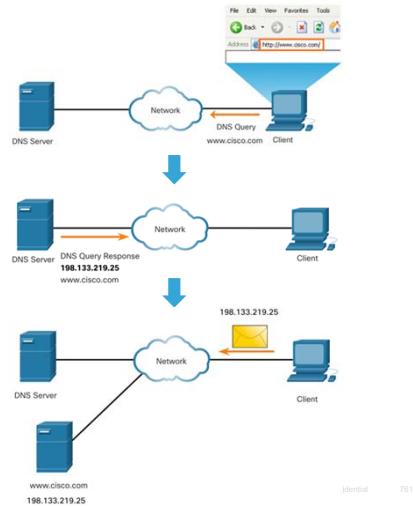
760

759

## IP Addressing Services

### Domain Name Service

- Domain names were created to convert the numeric IP addresses into a simple, recognizable name.
- Fully-qualified domain names (FQDNs), such as <http://www.cisco.com>, are much easier for people to remember than 198.133.219.25.
- The DNS protocol defines an automated service that matches resource names with the required numeric network address. It includes the format for queries, responses, and data.



761

## IP Addressing Services

### DNS Message Format

The DNS server stores different types of resource records that are used to resolve names. These records contain the name, address, and type of record.

Some of these record types are as follows:

- A - An end device IPv4 address
- NS - An authoritative name server
- AAAA - An end device IPv6 address (pronounced quad-A)
- MX - A mail exchange record

When a client makes a query, the server DNS process first looks at its own records to resolve the name. If it is unable to resolve the name by using its stored records, it contacts other servers to resolve the name.

After a match is found and returned to the original requesting server, the server temporarily stores the numbered address in the event that the same name is requested again.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 762

762

## IP Addressing Services

### DNS Message Format (Cont.)

DNS uses the same message format between servers, consisting of a question, answer, authority, and additional information for all types of client queries and server responses, error messages, and transfer of resource record information.

DNS message section	Description
Question	The question for the name server
Answer	Resource Records answering the question
Authority	Resource Records pointing toward an authority
Additional	Resource Records holding additional information

cisco

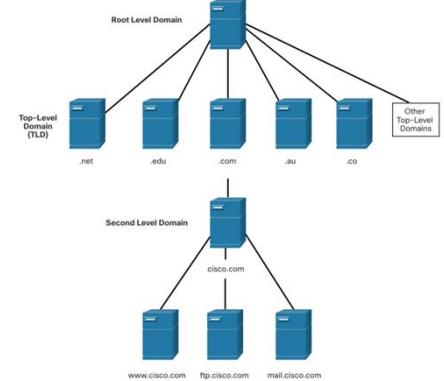
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 763

763

## IP Addressing Services

### DNS Hierarchy

- DNS uses a hierarchical system to create a database to provide name resolution.
- Each DNS server maintains a specific database file and is only responsible for managing name-to-IP mappings for that small portion of the entire DNS structure.
- When a DNS server receives a request for a name translation that is not within its DNS zone, the DNS server forwards the request to another DNS server within the proper zone for translation.
- Examples of top-level domains:
  - .com - a business or industry
  - .org - a non-profit organization
  - .au - Australia



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 764

764

## IP Addressing Services

### The nslookup Command

- Nslookup is a computer operating system utility that allows a user to manually query the DNS servers configured on the device to resolve a given host name.
- This utility can also be used to troubleshoot name resolution issues and to verify the current status of the name servers.
- When the **nslookup** command is issued, the default DNS server configured for your host is displayed.
- The name of a host or domain can be entered at the **nslookup** prompt.

```
C:\Users> nslookup
Default Server: dns-sj.cisco.com
Address: 171.70.168.183
> www.cisco.com
Server: dns-sj.cisco.com
Address: 171.70.168.183
Name: origin-www.cisco.com
Addresses: 2001:420:1101::1::a
173.37.145.84
Aliases: www.cisco.com
> cisco.netacad.net
Server: dns-sj.cisco.com
Address: 171.70.168.183
Name: cisco.netacad.net
Address: 72.163.6.223
>
```

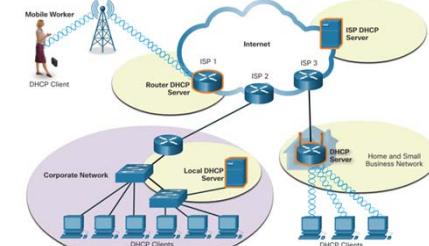
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 765

765

## IP Addressing Services

### Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol

- The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) for IPv4 service automates the assignment of IPv4 addresses, subnet masks, gateways, and other IPv4 networking parameters.
- DHCP is considered dynamic addressing compared to static addressing. Static addressing is manually entering IP address information.
- When a host connects to the network, the DHCP server is contacted, and an address is requested. The DHCP server chooses an address from a configured range of addresses called a pool and assigns (leases) it to the host.
- Many networks use both DHCP and static addressing. DHCP is used for general purpose hosts, such as end user devices. Static addressing is used for network devices, such as gateway routers, switches, servers, and printers.



**Note:** DHCP for IPv6 (DHCPv6) provides similar services for IPv6 clients. However, DHCPv6 does not provide a default gateway address. This can only be obtained dynamically from the Router Advertisement message of the router.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 766

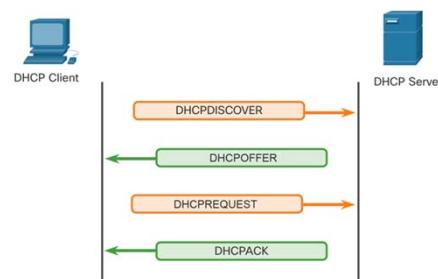
766

## IP Addressing Services

### DHCP Operation

#### The DHCP Process:

- When an IPv4, DHCP-configured device boots up or connects to the network, the client broadcasts a DHCP discover (DHCPDISCOVER) message to identify any available DHCP servers on the network.
- A DHCP server replies with a DHCP offer (DHCPOFFER) message, which offers a lease to the client. (If a client receives more than one offer due to multiple DHCP servers on the network, it must choose one.)
- The client sends a DHCP request (DHCPREQUEST) message that identifies the explicit server and lease offer that the client is accepting.
- The server then returns a DHCP acknowledgment (DHCPACK) message that acknowledges to the client that the lease has been finalized.
- If the offer is no longer valid, then the selected server responds with a DHCP negative acknowledgment (DHCPNAK) message and the process must begin with a new DHCPDISCOVER message.



**Note:** DHCPv6 has a set of messages that is similar to those for DHCPv4. The DHCPv6 messages are SOLICIT, ADVERTISE, INFORMATION REQUEST, and REPLY.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 767

## IP Addressing Services

### Lab – Observe DNS Resolution

In this lab, you complete the following objectives:

- Observe the DNS Conversion of a URL to an IP Address
- Observe DNS Lookup Using the **nslookup** Command on a Web Site
- Observe DNS Lookup Using the **nslookup** Command on Mail Servers

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 768

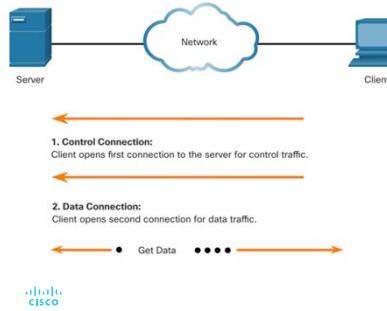
768

## 15.5 File Sharing Services

769

### File Sharing Services File Transfer Protocol

FTP was developed to allow for data transfers between a client and a server. An FTP client is an application which runs on a computer that is being used to push and pull data from an FTP server.



**Step 1** - The client establishes the first connection to the server for control traffic using TCP port 21. The traffic consists of client commands and server replies.

**Step 2** - The client establishes the second connection to the server for the actual data transfer using TCP port 20. This connection is created every time there is data to be transferred.

**Step 3** - The data transfer can happen in either direction. The client can download (pull) data from the server, or the client can upload (push) data to the server.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 770

770

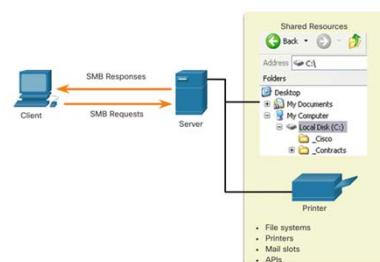
### File Sharing Services Server Message Block

The Server Message Block (SMB) is a client/server, request-response file sharing protocol. Servers can make their own resources available to clients on the network.

Three functions of SMB messages:

- Start, authenticate, and terminate sessions
- Control file and printer access
- Allow an application to send or receive messages to or from another device

Unlike the file sharing supported by FTP, clients establish a long-term connection to servers. After the connection is established, the user of the client can access the resources on the server as though the resource is local to the client host.



771

## 15.6 Module Practice and Quiz

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 772

772

## Module Practice and Quiz

### What did I learn in this module?

- Application layer protocols are used to exchange data between programs running on the source and destination hosts. The presentation layer has three primary functions: formatting, or presenting data, compressing data, and encrypting data for transmission and decrypting data upon receipt. The session layer creates and maintains dialogs between source and destination applications.
- In the client/server model, the device requesting the information is called a client and the device responding to the request is called a server.
- In a P2P network, two or more computers are connected via a network and can share resources without having a dedicated server.
- The three common HTTP message types are GET, POST, and PUT.
- Email supports three separate protocols for operation: SMTP, POP, and IMAP.
- DNS protocol matches resource names with the required numeric network address.
- DHCP for IPv4 service automates the assignment of IPv4 addresses, subnet masks, gateways, and other IPv4 networking parameters. The DHCPv6 messages are SOLICIT, ADVERTISE, INFORMATION REQUEST, and REPLY.
- An FTP client is an application which runs on a computer that is being used to push and pull data from an FTP server.
- Three functions of SMB messages: start, authenticate, and terminate sessions, control file and printer access, and allow an application to send or receive messages to or from another device.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 773

773

## Module 15 : Application Layer

### New Terms and Commands

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Application Layer</li> <li>Presentation Layer</li> <li>Session Layer</li> <li>Client-server model</li> <li>Peer-to-peer</li> <li>Uniform Resource Locator (URL)</li> <li>Uniform Resource Identifiers (URI)</li> <li>HTTP/HTTPS</li> <li>GET</li> <li>POST</li> <li>PUT</li> <li>SMTP</li> <li>POP</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IMAP</li> <li>Domain Name Service (DNS)</li> <li>Fully-Qualified Domain Names (FQDNs)</li> <li>nslookup</li> <li>Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)</li> <li>DHCPOFFER</li> <li>DHCPREQUEST</li> <li>DHCPACK</li> <li>File Transfer Protocol (FTP)</li> <li>Server Message Block (SMB)</li> </ul> |
|--|--|



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 774

774



## Module 16: Network Security Fundamentals

### Instructor Materials

Introduction to Networks v7.0  
(ITN)



### What to Expect in this Module

To facilitate learning, the following features within the GUI may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Animations	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Videos	Expose learners to new skills and concepts.
Check Your Understanding(CYU)	Per topic online quiz to help learners gauge content understanding.
Interactive Activities	A variety of formats to help learners gauge content understanding.
Syntax Checker	Small simulations that expose learners to Cisco command line to practice configuration skills.
PT Activity	Simulation and modeling activities designed to explore, acquire, reinforce, and expand skills.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 777

777

## What to Expect in this Module (Cont.)

To facilitate learning, the following features may be included in this module:

Feature	Description
Hands-On Labs	Labs designed for working with physical equipment.
Class Activities	These are found on the Instructor Resources page. Class Activities are designed to facilitate learning, class discussion, and collaboration.
Module Quizzes	Self-assessments that integrate concepts and skills learned throughout the series of topics presented in the module.
Module Summary	Briefly recaps module content.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 778

778



784

## Module Objectives

**Module Title:** Network Security Fundamentals

**Module Objective:** Configure switches and routers with device hardening features to enhance security.

Topic Title	Topic Objective
Security Threats and Vulnerabilities	Explain why basic security measure are necessary on network devices.
Network Attacks	Identify security vulnerabilities.
Network Attack Mitigation	Identify general mitigation techniques.
Device Security	Configure network devices with device hardening features to mitigate security threats.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 785

785

## 16.1 Security Threats and Vulnerabilities



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 786

786

## Security Threats and Vulnerabilities

### Types of Threats

Attacks on a network can be devastating and can result in a loss of time and money due to damage, or theft of important information or assets. Intruders can gain access to a network through software vulnerabilities, hardware attacks, or through guessing someone's username and password. Intruders who gain access by modifying software or exploiting software vulnerabilities are called threat actors.

After the threat actor gains access to the network, four types of threats may arise:

- Information Theft
- Data Loss and manipulation
- Identity Theft
- Disruption of Service


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
787

## Security Threats and Vulnerabilities

### Types of Vulnerabilities

Vulnerability is the degree of weakness in a network or a device. Some degree of vulnerability is inherent in routers, switches, desktops, servers, and even security devices. Typically, the network devices under attack are the endpoints, such as servers and desktop computers.

There are three primary vulnerabilities or weaknesses:

- Technological Vulnerabilities might include TCP/IP Protocol weaknesses, Operating System Weaknesses, and Network Equipment weaknesses.
- Configuration Vulnerabilities might include unsecured user accounts, system accounts with easily guessed passwords, misconfigured internet services, unsecure default settings, and misconfigured network equipment.
- Security Policy Vulnerabilities might include lack of a written security policy, politics, lack of authentication continuity, logical access controls not applied, software and hardware installation and changes not following policy, and a nonexistent disaster recovery plan.

All three of these sources of vulnerabilities can leave a network or device open to various attacks, including malicious code attacks and network attacks.


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
788
787

## Security Threats and Vulnerabilities

### Physical Security

If network resources can be physically compromised, a threat actor can deny the use of network resources. The four classes of physical threats are as follows:

- **Hardware threats** - This includes physical damage to servers, routers, switches, cabling plant, and workstations.
- **Environmental threats** - This includes temperature extremes (too hot or too cold) or humidity extremes (too wet or too dry).
- **Electrical threats** - This includes voltage spikes, insufficient supply voltage (brownouts), unconditioned power (noise), and total power loss.
- **Maintenance threats** - This includes poor handling of key electrical components (electrostatic discharge), lack of critical spare parts, poor cabling, and poor labeling.

A good plan for physical security must be created and implemented to address these issues.


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
789
789

## 16.2 Network Attacks


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
790

## Network Attacks Types of Malware

Malware is short for malicious software. It is code or software specifically designed to damage, disrupt, steal, or inflict "bad" or illegitimate action on data, hosts, or networks. The following are types of malware:

- **Viruses** - A computer virus is a type of malware that propagates by inserting a copy of itself into, and becoming part of, another program. It spreads from one computer to another, leaving infections as it travels.
- **Worms** - Computer worms are similar to viruses in that they replicate functional copies of themselves and can cause the same type of damage. In contrast to viruses, which require the spreading of an infected host file, worms are standalone software and do not require a host program or human help to propagate.
- **Trojan Horses** - It is a harmful piece of software that looks legitimate. Unlike viruses and worms, Trojan horses do not reproduce by infecting other files. They self-replicate. Trojan horses must spread through user interaction such as opening an email attachment or downloading and running a file from the internet.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

791

791

## Network Attacks Access Attacks

Access attacks exploit known vulnerabilities in authentication services, FTP services, and web services to gain entry to web accounts, confidential databases, and other sensitive information.

Access attacks can be classified into four types:

- **Password attacks** - Implemented using brute force, trojan horse, and packet sniffers
- **Trust exploitation** - A threat actor uses unauthorized privileges to gain access to a system, possibly compromising the target.
- **Port redirection** - A threat actor uses a compromised system as a base for attacks against other targets. For example, a threat actor using SSH (port 22) to connect to a compromised host A. Host A is trusted by host B and, therefore, the threat actor can use Telnet (port 23) to access it.
- **Man-in-the middle** - The threat actor is positioned in between two legitimate entities in order to read or modify the data that passes between the two parties.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

793

793

## Network Attacks Reconnaissance Attacks

In addition to malicious code attacks, it is also possible for networks to fall prey to various network attacks. Network attacks can be classified into three major categories:

- **Reconnaissance attacks** - The discovery and mapping of systems, services, or vulnerabilities.
- **Access attacks** - The unauthorized manipulation of data, system access, or user privileges.
- **Denial of service** - The disabling or corruption of networks, systems, or services.

For reconnaissance attacks, external threat actors can use internet tools, such as the **nslookup** and **whois** utilities, to easily determine the IP address space assigned to a given corporation or entity. After the IP address space is determined, a threat actor can then ping the publicly available IP addresses to identify the addresses that are active.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

792

792

## Network Attacks Denial of Service Attacks

Denial of service (DoS) attacks are the most publicized form of attack and among the most difficult to eliminate. However, because of their ease of implementation and potentially significant damage, DoS attacks deserve special attention from security administrators.

- DoS attacks take many forms. Ultimately, they prevent authorized people from using a service by consuming system resources. To help prevent DoS attacks it is important to stay up to date with the latest security updates for operating systems and applications.
- DoS attacks are a major risk because they interrupt communication and cause significant loss of time and money. These attacks are relatively simple to conduct, even by an unskilled threat actor.
- A DDoS is similar to a DoS attack, but it originates from multiple, coordinated sources. For example, a threat actor builds a network of infected hosts, known as zombies. A network of zombies is called a botnet. The threat actor uses a command and control (CnC) program to instruct the botnet of zombies to carry out a DDoS attack.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

794

794

**Network Attacks****Lab – Research Network Security Threats**

In this lab, you will complete the following objectives:

- Part 1: Explore the SANS Website
- Part 2: Identify Recent Network Security Threats
- Part 3: Detail a Specific Network Security Threat



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 795

795

## 16.3 Network Attack Mitigations



© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 796

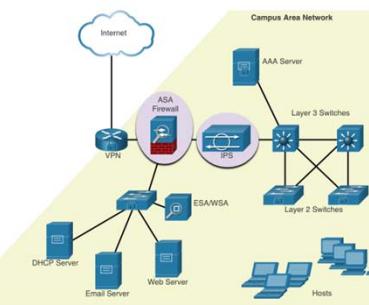
796

**Network Attack Mitigations****The Defense-in-Depth Approach**

To mitigate network attacks, you must first secure devices including routers, switches, servers, and hosts. Most organizations employ a defense-in-depth approach (also known as a layered approach) to security. This requires a combination of networking devices and services working in tandem.

Several security devices and services are implemented to protect an organization's users and assets against TCP/IP threats:

- VPN
- ASA Firewall
- IPS
- ESA/WSA
- AAA Server



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 797

797

**Network Attack Mitigations****Keep Backups**

Backing up device configurations and data is one of the most effective ways of protecting against data loss. Backups should be performed on a regular basis as identified in the security policy. Data backups are usually stored offsite to protect the backup media if anything happens to the main facility.

The table shows backup considerations and their descriptions.

Consideration	Description
Frequency	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Perform backups on a regular basis as identified in the security policy.</li> <li>• Full backups can be time-consuming, therefore perform monthly or weekly backups with frequent partial backups of changed files.</li> </ul>
Storage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Always validate backups to ensure the integrity of the data and validate the file restoration procedures.</li> </ul>
Security	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Backups should be transported to an approved offsite storage location on a daily, weekly, or monthly rotation, as required by the security policy.</li> </ul>
Validation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Backups should be protected using strong passwords. The password is required to restore the data.</li> </ul>



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 798

798

## Network Attack Mitigations Upgrade, Update, and Patch

As new malware is released, enterprises need to keep current with the latest versions of antivirus software.

- The most effective way to mitigate a worm attack is to download security updates from the operating system vendor and patch all vulnerable systems.
- One solution to the management of critical security patches is to make sure all end systems automatically download updates.



799

## Network Attack Mitigations Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting

Authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA, or “triple A”) network security services provide the primary framework to set up access control on network devices.

- AAA is a way to control who is permitted to access a network (authenticate), what actions they perform while accessing the network (authorize), and making a record of what was done while they are there (accounting).
- The concept of AAA is similar to the use of a credit card. The credit card identifies who can use it, how much that user can spend, and keeps account of what items the user spent money on.



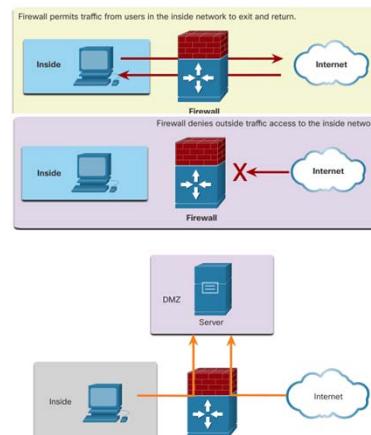
© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 800

800

## Network Attack Mitigations Firewalls

Network firewalls reside between two or more networks, control the traffic between them, and help prevent unauthorized access.

A firewall could allow outside users controlled access to specific services. For example, servers accessible to outside users are usually located on a special network referred to as the demilitarized zone (DMZ). The DMZ enables a network administrator to apply specific policies for hosts connected to that network.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 801

## Network Attack Mitigations Types of Firewalls

Firewall products come packaged in various forms. These products use different techniques for determining what will be permitted or denied access to a network. They include the following:

- Packet filtering** - Prevents or allows access based on IP or MAC addresses
- Application filtering** - Prevents or allows access by specific application types based on port numbers
- URL filtering** - Prevents or allows access to websites based on specific URLs or keywords
- Stateful packet inspection (SPI)** - Incoming packets must be legitimate responses to requests from internal hosts. Unsolicited packets are blocked unless permitted specifically. SPI can also include the capability to recognize and filter out specific types of attacks, such as denial of service (DoS).

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 802

802

## Network Attack Mitigations Endpoint Security

An endpoint, or host, is an individual computer system or device that acts as a network client. Common endpoints are laptops, desktops, servers, smartphones, and tablets.

Securing endpoint devices is one of the most challenging jobs of a network administrator because it involves human nature. A company must have well-documented policies in place and employees must be aware of these rules.

Employees need to be trained on proper use of the network. Policies often include the use of antivirus software and host intrusion prevention. More comprehensive endpoint security solutions rely on network access control.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 803

## 16.4 Device Security



© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 804

803

## Device Security Cisco AutoSecure

The security settings are set to the default values when a new operating system is installed on a device. In most cases, this level of security is inadequate. For Cisco routers, the Cisco AutoSecure feature can be used to assist securing the system.

In addition, there are some simple steps that should be taken that apply to most operating systems:

- Default usernames and passwords should be changed immediately.
- Access to system resources should be restricted to only the individuals that are authorized to use those resources.
- Any unnecessary services and applications should be turned off and uninstalled when possible.
- Often, devices shipped from the manufacturer have been sitting in a warehouse for a period of time and do not have the most up-to-date patches installed. It is important to update any software and install any security patches prior to implementation.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 805

805

## Device Security Passwords

To protect network devices, it is important to use strong passwords. Here are standard guidelines to follow:

- Use a password length of at least eight characters, preferably 10 or more characters.
- Make passwords complex. Include a mix of uppercase and lowercase letters, numbers, symbols, and spaces, if allowed.
- Avoid passwords based on repetition, common dictionary words, letter or number sequences, usernames, relative or pet names, biographical information, such as birthdates, ID numbers, ancestor names, or other easily identifiable pieces of information.
- Deliberately misspell a password. For example, Smith = Smyth = 5mYth or Security = 5ecur1ty.
- Change passwords often. If a password is unknowingly compromised, the window of opportunity for the threat actor to use the password is limited.
- Do not write passwords down and leave them in obvious places such as on the desk or monitor.

On Cisco routers, leading spaces are ignored for passwords, but spaces after the first character are not. Therefore, one method to create a strong password is to use the space bar and create a phrase made of many words. This is called a passphrase. A passphrase is often easier to remember than a simple password. It is also longer and harder to guess.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 806

806

## Device Security Additional Password Security

There are several steps that can be taken to help ensure that passwords remain secret on a Cisco router and switch including these:

- Encrypt all plaintext passwords with the **service password-encryption** command.
- Set a minimum acceptable password length with the **security passwords min-length** command.
- Deter brute-force password guessing attacks with the **login block-for # attempts # within #** command.
- Disable an inactive privileged EXEC mode access after a specified amount of time with the **exec-timeout** command.

```
Router(config)# service password-encryption
Router(config)# security password min-length 8
Router(config)# login block-for 120 attempts 3 within 60
Router(config)# line vty 0 4
Router(config-line)# password cisco
Router(config-line)# exec-timeout 5 30
Router(config-line)# transport input ssh
Router(config-line)# end
Router#
Router# show running-config | section line vty
line vty 0 4
password 7 03095A0F034F
exec-timeout 5 30
login
Router#
```


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
807

## Device Security Enable SSH

It is possible to configure a Cisco device to support SSH using the following steps:

- Configure a unique device hostname.** A device must have a unique hostname other than the default.
- Configure the IP domain name.** Configure the IP domain name of the network by using the global configuration mode command **ip-domain name**.
- Generate a key to encrypt SSH traffic.** SSH encrypts traffic between source and destination. However, to do so, a unique authentication key must be generated by using the global configuration command **crypto key generate rsa general-keys modulus bits**. The modulus *bits* determines the size of the key and can be configured from 360 bits to 2048 bits. The larger the bit value, the more secure the key. However, larger bit values also take longer to encrypt and decrypt information. The minimum recommended modulus length is 1024 bits.
- Verify or create a local database entry.** Create a local database username entry using the **username** global configuration command.
- Authenticate against the local database.** Use the **login local** line configuration command to authenticate the vty line against the local database.
- Enable vty inbound SSH sessions.** By default, no input session is allowed on vty lines. You can specify multiple input protocols including Telnet and SSH using the **transport input [ssh | telnet]** command.


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
808

807

## Device Security Disable Unused Services

Cisco routers and switches start with a list of active services that may or may not be required in your network. Disable any unused services to preserve system resources, such as CPU cycles and RAM, and prevent threat actors from exploiting these services.

- The type of services that are on by default will vary depending on the IOS version. For example, IOS-XE typically will have only HTTPS and DHCP ports open. You can verify this with the **show ip ports all** command.
- IOS versions prior to IOS-XE use the **show control-plane host open-ports** command.


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
809

## Device Security Packet Tracer – Configure Secure Passwords and SSH

In this Packet Tracer, you will configure passwords and SSH:

- The network administrator has asked you to prepare RTA and SW1 for deployment. Before they can be connected to the network, security measures must be enabled.


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential
810

809

810

**Device Security****Lab – Configure Network Devices with SSH**

In this lab, you will complete the following objectives:

- Part 1: Configure Basic Device Settings
- Part 2: Configure the Router for SSH Access
- Part 3: Configure the Switch for SSH Access
- Part 4: SSH from the CLI on the Switch



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

811

## 16.5 Module Practice and Quiz



© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

812

811

**Module Practice and Quiz****Packet Tracer – Secure Network Devices**

In this activity you will configure a router and a switch based on a list of requirements.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

813

**Module Practice and Quiz****Lab – Secure Network Devices**

In this lab, you will complete the following objectives:

- Configure Basic Device Settings
- Configure Basic Security Measures on the Router
- Configure Basic Security Measures on the Switch



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

814

813

## Module Practice and Quiz

**What Did I Learn In This Module?**

- After the threat actor gains access to the network, four types of threats may arise: information theft, data loss and manipulation, identity theft, and disruption of service.
- There are three primary vulnerabilities or weaknesses: technological, configuration, and security policy.
- The four classes of physical threats are: hardware, environmental, electrical, and maintenance.
- Malware is short for malicious software. It is code or software specifically designed to damage, disrupt, steal, or inflict "bad" or illegitimate action on data, hosts, or networks. Viruses, worms, and Trojan horses are types of malware.
- Network attacks can be classified into three major categories: reconnaissance, access, and denial of service.
- To mitigate network attacks, you must first secure devices including routers, switches, servers, and hosts. Most organizations employ a defense-in-depth approach to security. This requires a combination of networking devices and services working together.
- Several security devices and services are implemented to protect an organization's users and assets against TCP/IP threats: VPN, ASA firewall, IPS, ESA/WSA, and AAA server.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 815

## Module Practice and Quiz

**What Did I Learn In This Module? (Cont.)**

- Infrastructure devices should have backups of configuration files and IOS images on an FTP or similar file server. If the computer or a router hardware fails, the data or configuration can be restored using the backup copy.
- The most effective way to mitigate a worm attack is to download security updates from the operating system vendor and patch all vulnerable systems. To manage critical security patches, to make sure all end systems automatically download updates.
- AAA is a way to control who is permitted to access a network (authenticate), what they can do while they are there (authorize), and what actions they perform while accessing the network (accounting).
- Network firewalls reside between two or more networks, control the traffic between them, and help prevent unauthorized access.
- Securing endpoint devices is critical to network security. A company must have well-documented policies in place, which may include the use of antivirus software and host intrusion prevention. More comprehensive endpoint security solutions rely on network access control.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 816

815

## Module Practice and Quiz

**What Did I Learn In This Module? (Cont.)**

- For Cisco routers, the Cisco AutoSecure feature can be used to assist securing the system. For most OSs default usernames and passwords should be changed immediately, access to system resources should be restricted to only the individuals that are authorized to use those resources, and any unnecessary services and applications should be turned off and uninstalled when possible.
- To protect network devices, it is important to use strong passwords. A passphrase is often easier to remember than a simple password. It is also longer and harder to guess.
- For routers and switches, encrypt all plaintext passwords, setting a minimum acceptable password length, deter brute-force password guessing attacks, and disable an inactive privileged EXEC mode access after a specified amount of time.
- Configure appropriate devices to support SSH, and disable unused services.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 817

817

## Module 16: Network Security Fundamentals

**New Terms and Commands**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>threat actor</li> <li>malware</li> <li>reconnaissance attacks</li> <li>access attacks</li> <li>defense-in-depth</li> <li>authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA)</li> <li>demilitarized zone (DMZ)</li> <li>Cisco AutoSecure</li> <li>passphrase</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>service password-encryption</b></li> <li><b>security passwords min-length</b></li> <li><b>login block-for</b></li> <li><b>exec-timeout</b></li> <li><b>crypto key generate rsa general-keys modulus</b></li> <li><b>username password   secret</b></li> <li><b>login local</b></li> <li><b>transport input ssh</b></li> <li><b>show ip ports all</b></li> <li><b>show control-plan host open-ports</b></li> </ul> |
|--|---|



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 818

818



819



830

## Module Objectives

**Module Title:** Build a Small Network

**Module Objective:** Implement a network design for a small network to include a router, a switch, and end devices.

Topic Title	Topic Objective
Devices in a Small Network	Identify the devices used in a small network.
Small Network Applications and Protocols	Identify the protocols and applications used in a small network.
Scale to Larger Networks	Explain how a small network serves as the basis of larger networks.
Verify Connectivity	Use the output of the ping and traceroute commands to verify connectivity and establish relative network performance.
Host and IOS Commands	Use host and IOS commands to acquire information about the devices in a network.
Troubleshooting Methodologies	Describe common network troubleshooting methodologies.
Troubleshooting Scenarios	Troubleshoot issues with devices in the network.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 831

831

## 17.1 Devices in a Small Network

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 832

832

## Devices in a Small Network

### Small Network Topologies

- The majority of businesses are small most of the business networks are also small.
- A small network design is usually simple.
- Small networks typically have a single WAN connection provided by DSL, cable, or an Ethernet connection.
- Large networks require an IT department to maintain, secure, and troubleshoot network devices and to protect organizational data. Small networks are managed by a local IT technician or by a contracted professional.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

833

## Devices in a Small Network

### Device Selection for a Small Network

Like large networks, small networks require planning and design to meet user requirements. Planning ensures that all requirements, cost factors, and deployment options are given due consideration. One of the first design considerations is the type of intermediary devices to use to support the network.

Factors that must be considered when selecting network devices include:

- cost
- speed and types of ports/interfaces
- expandability
- operating system features and services



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

834

833

## Devices in a Small Network

### IP Addressing for a Small Network

When implementing a network, create an IP addressing scheme and use it. All hosts and devices within an internetwork must have a unique address. Devices that will factor into the IP addressing scheme include the following:

- End user devices - The number and type of connections (i.e., wired, wireless, remote access)
- Servers and peripherals devices (e.g., printers and security cameras)
- Intermediary devices including switches and access points

It is recommended that you plan, document, and maintain an IP addressing scheme based on device type. The use of a planned IP addressing scheme makes it easier to identify a type of device and to troubleshoot problems.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

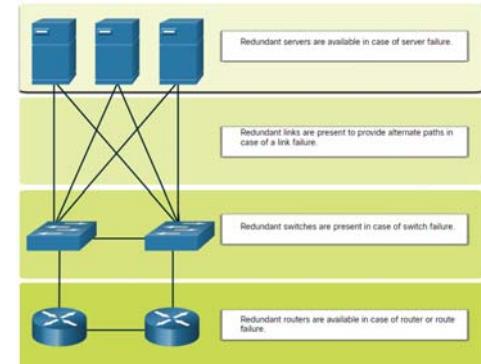
835

## Devices in a Small Network

### Redundancy in a Small Network

In order to maintain a high degree of reliability, **redundancy** is required in the network design. Redundancy helps to eliminate single points of failure.

Redundancy can be accomplished by installing duplicate equipment. It can also be accomplished by supplying duplicate network links for critical areas.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

836

835

836

## Devices in a Small Network Traffic Management

- The goal for a good network design is to enhance the productivity of the employees and minimize network downtime.
- The routers and switches in a small network should be configured to support real-time traffic, such as voice and video, in an appropriate manner relative to other data traffic. A good network design will implement quality of service (QoS).
- Priority queuing has four queues. The high-priority queue is always emptied first.



## 17.2 Small Network Applications and Protocols

837

### Small Network Applications and Protocols Common Applications

After you have set it up, your network still needs certain types of applications and protocols in order to work. The network is only as useful as the applications that are on it.

There are two forms of software programs or processes that provide access to the network:

- Network Applications:** Applications that implement application layer protocols and are able to communicate directly with the lower layers of the protocol stack.
- Application Layer Services:** For applications that are not network-aware, the programs that interface with the network and prepare the data for transfer.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 839

839

### Small Network Applications and Protocols Common Protocols

Network protocols support the applications and services used by employees in a small network.

- Network administrators commonly require access to network devices and servers. The two most common remote access solutions are Telnet and Secure Shell (SSH).
- Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) and Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTP) are used between web clients and web servers.
- Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) is used to send email, Post Office Protocol (POP3) or Internet Mail Access Protocol (IMAP) are used by clients to retrieve email.
- File Transfer Protocol (FTP) and Security File Transfer Protocol (SFTP) are used to download and upload files between a client and an FTP server.
- Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is used by clients to acquire an IP configuration from a DHCP Server.
- The Domain Name Service (DNS) resolves domain names to IP addresses.

**Note:** A server could provide multiple network services. For instance, a server could be an email, FTP and SSH server.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 840

840

## Small Network Applications and Protocols Common Protocols (Cont.)

These network protocols comprise the fundamental toolset of a network professional, defining:

- Processes on either end of a communication session.
- Types of messages.
- Syntax of the messages.
- Meaning of informational fields.
- How messages are sent and the expected response.
- Interaction with the next lower layer.

Many companies have established a policy of using secure versions (e.g., SSH, SFTP, and HTTPS) of these protocols whenever possible.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 841

## Small Network Applications and Protocols Voice and Video Applications

- Businesses today are increasingly using IP telephony and streaming media to communicate with customers and business partners, as well as enabling their employees to work remotely.
- The network administrator must ensure the proper equipment is installed in the network and that the network devices are configured to ensure priority delivery.
- The factors that a small network administrator must consider when supporting real-time applications:
  - **Infrastructure** - Does it have the capacity and capability to support real-time applications?
  - **VoIP** - VoIP is typically less expensive than IP Telephony, but at the cost of quality and features.
  - **IP Telephony** - This employs dedicated servers for call control and signaling.
  - **Real-Time Applications** - The network must support Quality of Service (QoS) mechanisms to minimize latency issues. Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP) and Real-Time Transport Control Protocol (RTCP) are two protocols that support real-time applications.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 842

841

## 17.3 Scale to Larger Networks Network Growth



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 843

### Scale to Larger Networks Small Network Growth

Growth is a natural process for many small businesses, and their networks must grow accordingly. Ideally, the network administrator has enough lead-time to make intelligent decisions about growing the network in alignment with the growth of the company.

To scale a network, several elements are required:

- **Network documentation** - Physical and logical topology
- **Device inventory** - List of devices that use or comprise the network
- **Budget** - Itemized IT budget, including fiscal year equipment purchasing budget
- **Traffic analysis** - Protocols, applications, and services and their respective traffic requirements should be documented

These elements are used to inform the decision-making that accompanies the scaling of a small network.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 844

843

844

## Scale to Larger Networks Protocol Analysis

It is important to understand the type of traffic that is crossing the network as well as the current traffic flow. There are several network management tools that can be used for this purpose.

To determine traffic flow patterns, it is important to do the following:

- Capture traffic during peak utilization times to get a good representation of the different traffic types.
- Perform the capture on different network segments and devices as some traffic will be local to a particular segment.
- Information gathered by the protocol analyzer is evaluated based on the source and destination of the traffic, as well as the type of traffic being sent.
- This analysis can be used to make decisions on how to manage the traffic more efficiently.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 845

## Scale to Larger Networks Employee Network Utilization

Many operating systems provide built-in tools to display such network utilization information. These tools can be used to capture a "snapshot" of information such as the following:

- OS and OS Version
- CPU utilization
- RAM utilization
- Drive utilization
- Non-Network applications
- Network applications

Documenting snapshots for employees in a small network over a period of time is very useful to identify evolving protocol requirements and associated traffic flows.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 846

845

## 17.4 Verify Connectivity

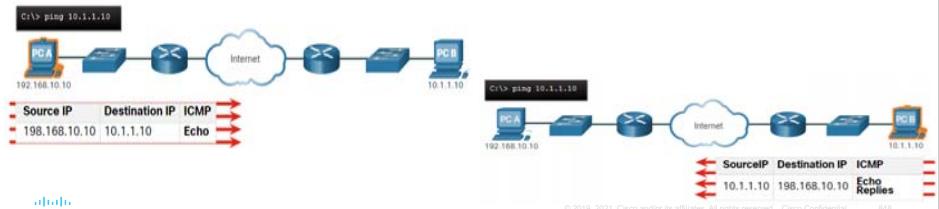


© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 847

### Verify Connectivity Verify Connectivity with Ping

Whether your network is small and new, or you are scaling an existing network, you will always want to be able to verify that your components are properly connected to each other and to the internet.

- The ping command, available on most operating systems, is the most effective way to quickly test Layer 3 connectivity between a source and destination IP address.
- The ping command uses the Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) echo (ICMP Type 8) and echo reply (ICMP Type 0) messages.



848

## Verify Connectivity

### Verify Connectivity with Ping (Cont.)

On a Windows 10 host, the ping command sends four consecutive ICMP echo messages and expects four consecutive ICMP echo replies from the destination. The IOS ping sends five ICMP echo messages and displays an indicator for each ICMP echo reply received.

IOS Ping Indicators are as follows:

Element	Description
!	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Exclamation mark indicates successful receipt of an echo reply message.</li> <li>It validates a Layer 3 connection between source and destination.</li> </ul>
.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A period means that time expired waiting for an echo reply message.</li> <li>This indicates a connectivity problem occurred somewhere along the path.</li> </ul>
U	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Uppercase U indicates a router along the path responded with an ICMP Type 3 "destination unreachable" error message.</li> <li>Possible reasons include the router does not know the direction to the destination network or it could not find the host on the destination network.</li> </ul>

**Note:** Other possible ping replies include Q, M, ?, or &. However, the meaning of these are out of scope for this module.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 849

## Verify Connectivity

### Extended Ping

The Cisco IOS offers an "extended" mode of the **ping** command.

Extended ping is entered in privileged EXEC mode by typing **ping** without a destination IP address. You will then be given several prompts to customize the extended **ping**.

**Note:** Pressing **Enter** accepts the indicated default values. The **ping ipv6** command is used for IPv6 extended pings.

```
R1# ping
Protocol [ip]:
Target IP address: 10.1.1.10
Repeat count [5]:
Datagram size [100]:
Timeout in seconds [2]:
Extended commands [n]: y
Ingress ping [n]:
Source address or interface: 192.168.10.1
DSCP Value [0]:
Type of service [0]:
Set DF bit in IP header? [no]:
Validate reply data? [no]:
Data pattern [0x0000ABCD]:
Loose, Strict, Record, Timestamp, Verbose[none]:
Sweep range of sizes [n]:
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 10.1.1.1, timeout is 2 seconds:
Packet sent with a source address of 192.168.10.1
!!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/1/1 ms
R1#
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 850

849

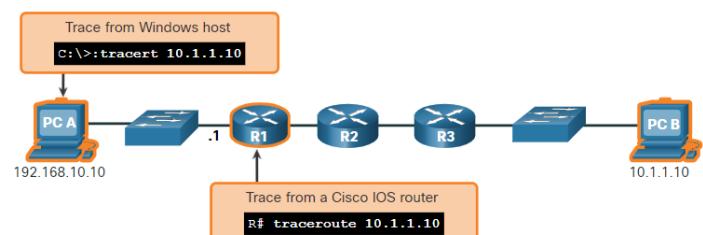
850

## Verify Connectivity

### Verify Connectivity with Traceroute

The ping command is useful to quickly determine if there is a Layer 3 connectivity problem. However, it does not identify where the problem is located along the path.

- Traceroute can help locate Layer 3 problem areas in a network. A trace returns a list of hops as a packet is routed through a network.
- The syntax of the trace command varies between operating systems.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 851

## Verify Connectivity

### Verify Connectivity with Traceroute (Cont.)

- The following is a sample output of **tracert** command on a Windows 10 host.
 

**Note:** Use **Ctrl-C** to interrupt a **tracert** in Windows.
- The only successful response was from the gateway on R1. Trace requests to the next hop timed out as indicated by the asterisk (\*), meaning that the next hop router did not respond or there is a failure in the network path. In this example there appears to be a problem between R1 and R2.

```
C:\Users\PC-A> tracert 10.1.1.10
Tracing route to 10.1.1.10 over a maximum of 30 hops:
  1  2 ms   2 ms   2 ms  192.168.10.1
  2  *       *       * Request timed out.
  3  *       *       * Request timed out.
  4  *       *       * Request timed out.
^C
C:\Users\PC-A>
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 852

851

852

## Verify Connectivity

### Verify Connectivity with Traceroute (Cont.)

The following are sample outputs of traceroute command from R1:

```
R1# traceroute 10.1.1.10
Type escape sequence to abort.
Tracing the route to 10.1.1.10
VRF info: (vrf in name/id, vrf out name/id)
 1 209.165.200.226 1 msec 0 msec 1 msec
 2 209.165.200.230 1 msec 0 msec 1 msec
 3 10.1.1.10 1 msec 0 msec
R1#
```

```
R1# traceroute 10.1.1.10
Type escape sequence to abort.
Tracing the route to 10.1.1.10
VRF Info: (vrf in name/id, vrf out name/id)
 1 209.165.200.226 1 msec 0 msec 1 msec
 2 209.165.200.230 1 msec 0 msec 1 msec
 3 * *
 4 * *
 5 *
```

- On the left, the trace validated that it could successfully reach PC B.
- On the right, the 10.1.1.10 host was not available, and the output shows asterisks where replies timed out. Timeouts indicate a potential network problem.
- Use **Ctrl-Shift-6** to interrupt a **traceroute** in Cisco IOS.

**Note:** Windows implementation of traceroute (tracert) sends ICMP Echo Requests. Cisco IOS and Linux use UDP with an invalid port number. The final destination will return an ICMP port unreachable message.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 853

## Verify Connectivity

### Extended Traceroute

Like the extended **ping** command, there is also an extended **traceroute** command. It allows the administrator to adjust parameters related to the command operation.

The Windows **tracert** command allows the input of several parameters through options in the command line. However, it is not guided like the extended traceroute IOS command. The following output displays the available options for the Windows **tracert** command:

```
C:\Users\PC-A> tracert /?
Usage: tracert [-d] [-h maximum_hops] [-j host-list] [-w timeout]
                [-k] [-s srcaddr] [-4] [-6] target_name
Options:
  -d          Do not resolve addresses to hostnames.
  -h maximum_hops Maximum number of hops to search for target.
  -j host-list Loose source route along host-list (IPv4-only).
  -w timeout   Wait timeout milliseconds for each reply.
  -R          Trace round-trip path (IPv6-only).
  -s srcaddr  Source address to use (IPv6-only).
  -4          Force using IPv4.
  -6          Force using IPv6.
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 854

854

## Verify Connectivity

### Extended Traceroute (Cont.)

- The Cisco IOS extended **traceroute** option enables the user to create a special type of trace by adjusting parameters related to the command operation.
- Extended traceroute is entered in privileged EXEC mode by typing **traceroute** without a destination IP address. IOS will guide you through the command options by presenting a number of prompts related to the setting of all the different parameters.
- Note:** Pressing **Enter** accepts the indicated default values.

```
R1# traceroute
Protocol [ip]:
Target IP address: 10.1.1.10
Ingress traceroute [n]:
Source address: 192.168.10.1
DSOP Value [0]:
Numeric display [n]:
Timeout in seconds [3]:
Probe count [3]:
Minimum Time to Live [1]:
Maximum Time to Live [30]:
Port Number [3434]:
Loose, Strict, Record, Timestamp, Verbose[none]:
Type escape sequence to abort.
Tracing the route to 192.168.10.10
VRF Info: (vrf in name/id, vrf out name/id)
 1 209.165.200.226 1 msec 1 msec 1 msec
 2 209.165.200.230 0 msec 1 msec 0 msec
 3 *
 10.1.1.10 2 msec 2 msec
R1#
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 855

## Verify Connectivity

### Network Baseline

- One of the most effective tools for monitoring and troubleshooting network performance is to establish a network baseline.
- One method for starting a baseline is to copy and paste the results from an executed ping, trace, or other relevant commands into a text file. These text files can be timestamped with the date and saved into an archive for later retrieval and comparison.
- Among items to consider are error messages and the response times from host to host.
- Corporate networks should have extensive baselines; more extensive than we can describe in this course. Professional-grade software tools are available for storing and maintaining baseline information.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 856

856

## Verify Connectivity Lab – Test Network Latency with Ping and Traceroute

In this lab, you will complete the following objectives:

- Part 1: Use Ping to Document Network Latency
- Part 2: Use Traceroute to Document Network Latency

 Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 857

## 17.5 Host and IOS Commands

 Cisco

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 858

857

### Host and IOS Commands

#### IP Configuration on a Windows Host

In Windows 10, you can access the IP address details from the **Network and Sharing Center** to quickly view the four important settings: address, mask, router, and DNS. Or you can issue the **ipconfig** command at the command line of a Windows computer.

- Use the **ipconfig /all** command to view the MAC address, as well as a number of details regarding the Layer 3 addressing of the device.
- If a host is configured as a DHCP client, the IP address configuration can be renewed using the **ipconfig /release** and **ipconfig /renew** commands.
- The DNS Client service on Windows PCs also optimizes the performance of DNS name resolution by storing previously resolved names in memory. The **ipconfig /displaydns** command displays all of the cached DNS entries on a Windows computer system.

```
C:\Users\PC-A> ipconfig
Windows IP Configuration
(Output omitted)
Wireless LAN adapter Wi-Fi:
  Connection-specific DNS Suffix . :
  Link-local IPv6 Address . . . . . : fe00::a4aa:2dd1:ae2d:a75e%10
  IPv4 Address . . . . . : 192.168.10.10
  Subnet Mask . . . . . : 255.255.255.0
  Default Gateway . . . . . : 192.168.10.1
(Output omitted)
```

 Cisco

© 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 859

### Host and IOS Commands

#### IP Configuration on a Linux Host

- Verifying IP settings using the GUI on a Linux machine will differ depending on the Linux distribution and desktop interface.
- On the command line, use the **ifconfig** command to display the status of the currently active interfaces and their IP configuration.
- The Linux **ip address** command is used to display addresses and their properties. It can also be used to add or delete IP addresses.

```
[analyst@setOps ~]$ ifconfig
enp0s3  Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 00:00:27:b5:d6:b0
      inet addr: 10.0.2.15 Bcast:10.0.2.255 Mask: 255.255.255.0
             inet6 addr: fe80::57cc:ed95:b3c9:2951%6 Scope:Link
                   UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
                   RX packets:1332239 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
                   TX packets:105918 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
                   collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
                         RX bytes:1855455914 (1.8 GB) TX bytes:13140139 (13.1 MB)
lo: flags=70 mtu 65536
      inet 127.0.0.1 netmask 255.0.0.0
             inet6 :: prefixlen 128 scopeid 0x10
                   loop txqueuelen 1000 (Local loopback)
                   RX packets 0 bytes 0 (0.0 B)
                   TX packets 0 bytes 0 (0.0 B)
                   RX errors 0 dropped 0 overruns 0 frame 0
                   TX errors 0 dropped 0 overruns 0 carrier 0 collisions 0
```

**Note:** The output displayed may vary depending on the Linux distribution.

 Cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 860

859

860

## Host and IOS Commands

## IP Configuration on a macOS Host

- In the GUI of a Mac host, open **Network Preferences > Advanced** to get the IP addressing information.
- The **ifconfig** command can also be used to verify the interface IP configuration at the command line.
- Other useful macOS commands to verify the host IP settings include **networksetup -listallnetworkservices** and the **networksetup -getinfo <network service>**.

```
MacBook-Air:- Admin$ networksetup -listallnetworkservices
An asterisk (*) denotes that a network service is disabled.
iPhone USB
Wi-Fi
Bluetooth PAN
Thunderbolt Bridge
MacBook-Air:- Admin$ networksetup -getinfo Wi-Fi
DHCP Configuration
IP address: 10.10.10.113
Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
Router: 10.10.10.1
Client ID:
IPv6: Automatic
IPv6 IP address: none
IPv6 Router: none
Wi-Fi ID: c4:b1:01:a0:64:98
MacBook-Air:- Admin$
```

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

861

## Host and IOS Commands

## The arp Command

The **arp** command is executed from the Windows, Linux, or Mac command prompt. The command lists all devices currently in the ARP cache of the host.

- The **arp -a** command displays the known IP address and MAC address binding. The ARP cache only displays information from devices that have been recently accessed.
- To ensure that the ARP cache is populated, **ping** a device so that it will have an entry in the ARP table.
- The cache can be cleared by using the **netsh interface ip delete arpcache** command in the event the network administrator wants to repopulate the cache with updated information.

**Note:** You may need administrator access on the host to be able to use the **netsh interface ip delete arpcache** command.

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

862

## Host and IOS Commands

## Common show Commands Revisited

Command	Description
show running-config	Verifies the current configuration and settings
show interfaces	Verifies the interface status and displays any error messages
show ip interface	Verifies the Layer 3 information of an interface
show arp	Verifies the list of known hosts on the local Ethernet LANs
show ip route	Verifies the Layer 3 routing information
show protocols	Verifies which protocols are operational
show version	Verifies the memory, interfaces, and licenses of the device

cisco

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

863

## Host and IOS Commands

## The show cdp neighbors Command

CDP provides the following information about each CDP neighbor device:

- Device identifiers** - The configured host name of a switch, router, or other device
- Address list** - Up to one network layer address for each protocol supported
- Port identifier** - The name of the local and remote port in the form of an ASCII character string, such as FastEthernet 0/0
- Capabilities list** - Whether a specific device is a Layer 2 switch or a Layer 3 switch
- Platform** - The hardware platform of the device.

The **show cdp neighbors detail** command reveals the IP address of a neighboring device.

```
R3# show cdp neighbors
Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans Bridge, B - Source Route Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, R - Repeater, P - Phone,
                  D - Remote, C - CSTA, M - Two-port Mac Relay
Device ID      Local Intfce     Holdtme   Capability Platform Port ID
S3            Gig 0/0/1       122        S I      WS-C2960+ Fas 0/5
Total cdp entries displayed : 1
R3#
```

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

864

863

864

## Host and IOS Commands

**The show ip interface brief Command**

One of the most frequently used commands is the **show ip interface brief** command. This command provides a more abbreviated output than the **show ip interface** command. It provides a summary of the key information for all the network interfaces on a router.

```
R1# show ip interface brief
Interface          IP-Address      OK? Method Status      Protocol
GigabitEthernet0/0/0 209.165.200.225 YES manual up
GigabitEthernet0/0/1 192.168.10.1   YES manual up
Serial0/1/0         unassigned     NO  unset down
Serial0/1/1         unassigned     NO  unset down
GigabitEthernet0     unassigned     YES unset administratively down down
R1#
```

```
S1# show ip interface brief
Interface          IP-Address      OK? Method Status      Protocol
Vlan1              192.168.254.250 YES manual up
FastEthernet0/1     unassigned     YES unset down
FastEthernet0/2     unassigned     YES unset up
FastEthernet0/3     unassigned     YES unset up
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

865

## Host and IOS Commands

**Video – The show version Command**

This video will demonstrate using the **show version** command to view information about the router.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

866

## Host and IOS Commands

**Packet Tracer – Interpret show Command Output**

This activity is designed to reinforce the use of router **show** commands. You are not required to configure, but rather analyze the output of several **show** commands.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

867

## 17.6 Troubleshooting Methodologies



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

868

867

868

## Troubleshooting Methodologies Basic Troubleshooting Approaches

Step	Description
Step 1. Identify the Problem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This is the first step in the troubleshooting process.</li> <li>Although tools can be used in this step, a conversation with the user is often very helpful.</li> </ul>
Step 2. Establish a Theory of Probable Causes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After the problem is identified, try to establish a theory of probable causes.</li> <li>This step often yields more than a few probable causes to the problem.</li> </ul>
Step 3. Test the Theory to Determine Cause	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Based on the probable causes, test your theories to determine which one is the cause of the problem.</li> <li>A technician may apply a quick fix to test and see if it solves the problem.</li> <li>If a quick fix does not correct the problem, you might need to research the problem further to establish the exact cause.</li> </ul>
Step 4. Establish a Plan of Action and Implement the Solution	After you have determined the exact cause of the problem, establish a plan of action to resolve the problem and implement the solution.
Step 5. Verify Solution and Implement Preventive Measures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After you have corrected the problem, verify full functionality.</li> <li>If applicable, implement preventive measures.</li> </ul>
Step 6. Document Findings, Actions, and Outcomes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the final step of the troubleshooting process, document your findings, actions, and outcomes.</li> <li>This is very important for future reference.</li> </ul>



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 869

## Troubleshooting Methodologies Resolve or Escalate?

- In some situations, it may not be possible to resolve the problem immediately. A problem should be escalated when it requires a manager decision, some specific expertise, or network access level unavailable to the troubleshooting technician.
- A company policy should clearly state when and how a technician should escalate a problem.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 870

869

870

## Troubleshooting Methodologies The debug Command

- The IOS **debug** command allows the administrator to display OS process, protocol, mechanism and event messages in real-time for analysis.
- All **debug** commands are entered in privileged EXEC mode. The Cisco IOS allows for narrowing the output of **debug** to include only the relevant feature or subfeature. Use **debug** commands only to troubleshoot specific problems.
- To list a brief description of all the debugging command options, use the **debug ?** command in privileged EXEC mode at the command line.
- To turn off a specific debugging feature, add the **no** keyword in front of the **debug** command
- Alternatively, you can enter the **undebug** form of the command in privileged EXEC mode.
- To turn off all active debug commands at once, use the **undebug all** command.
- Be cautious using some **debug** commands, as they may generate a substantial amount of output and use a large portion of system resources. The router could get so busy displaying **debug** messages that it would not have enough processing power to perform its network functions, or even listen to commands to turn off debugging.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 871

## Troubleshooting Methodologies The terminal monitor Command

- debug** and certain other IOS message output is not automatically displayed on remote connections. This is because log messages are prevented from being displayed on vty lines.
- To display log messages on a terminal (virtual console), use the **terminal monitor** privileged EXEC command. To stop logging messages on a terminal, use the **terminal no monitor** privileged EXEC command.

```
R3# telnet 209.165.200.225
Trying 209.165.200.225 ... Open
Authorized access only!
User Access Verification
Password: 
R3# enable
R3# debug ip icmp
R3# packet debugging is on
R3# ping 10.1.1.1
Type escape sequence to abort.
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/1/2 ms
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/1/2 ms
R3#
R3# terminal monitor
R3# ping 10.1.1.1
Type escape sequence to abort.
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/1/2 ms
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/1/2 ms
R3#
**ping 20.10.0.10: ICMP echo reply rcvd, src 10.1.1.1, dst 209.165.200.225,topology BASE, disc 0
toswid 0
**ping 20.10.0.10: ICMP echo reply rcvd, src 10.1.1.1, dst 209.165.200.225,topology BASE, disc 0
toswid 0
**ping 20.10.0.10: ICMP echo reply rcvd, src 10.1.1.1, dst 209.165.200.225,topology BASE, disc 0
toswid 0
**ping 20.10.0.10: ICMP echo reply rcvd, src 10.1.1.1, dst 209.165.200.225,topology BASE, disc 0
toswid 0
R3# no debug ip icmp
ICMP packet debugging is off
R3#
```



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 872

871

872

## 17.7 Troubleshooting Scenarios

873

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 873

### Troubleshooting Scenarios Duplex Operation and Mismatch Issues

- Interconnecting Ethernet interfaces must operate in the same duplex mode for best communication performance and to avoid inefficiency and latency on the link.
- The Ethernet autonegotiation feature facilitates configuration, minimizes problems and maximizes link performance between two interconnecting Ethernet links. The connected devices first announce their supported capabilities and then choose the highest performance mode supported by both ends.
- If one of the two connected devices is operating in full-duplex and the other is operating in half-duplex, a duplex mismatch occurs. While data communication will occur through a link with a duplex mismatch, link performance will be very poor.
- Duplex mismatches are typically caused by a misconfigured interface or in rare instances by a failed autonegotiation. Duplex mismatches may be difficult to troubleshoot as the communication between devices still occurs.

874

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 874

### Troubleshooting Scenarios IP Addressing Issues on IOS Devices

- Two common causes of incorrect IPv4 assignment are manual assignment mistakes or DHCP-related issues.
- Network administrators often have to manually assign IP addresses to devices such as servers and routers. If a mistake is made during the assignment, then communications issues with the device are very likely to occur.
- On an IOS device, use the **show ip interface** or **show ip interface brief** commands to verify what IPv4 addresses are assigned to the network interfaces. For example, issuing the **show ip interface brief** command as shown would validate the interface status on R1.

```
R1# show ip interface brief
Interface      IP-Address      OK? Method Status          Protocol
GigabitEthernet0/0/0  209.165.200.225  YES manual up           up
GigabitEthernet0/0/1  192.168.10.1    YES manual up           up
Serial0/1/0          unassigned      NO  unset  down        down
Serial0/1/1          unassigned      NO  unset  down        down
GigabitEthernet0      unassigned      YES unset administratively down down
R1#
```

875

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 875

### Troubleshooting Scenarios IP Addressing Issues on End Devices

- On Windows-based machines, when the device cannot contact a DHCP server, Windows will automatically assign an address belonging to the 169.254.0.0/16 range. This feature is called Automatic Private IP Addressing (APIPA).
- A computer with an APIPA address will not be able to communicate with other devices in the network because those devices will most likely not belong to the 169.254.0.0/16 network.
- **Note:** Other operating systems, such Linux and OS X, do not use APIPA.
- If the device is unable to communicate with the DHCP server, then the server cannot assign an IPv4 address for the specific network and the device will not be able to communicate.
- To verify the IP addresses assigned to a Windows-based computer, use the **ipconfig** command.

876

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 876

**Troubleshooting Scenarios****Default Gateway Issues**

- The default gateway for an end device is the closest networking device, belonging to the same network as the end device, that can forward traffic to other networks. If a device has an incorrect or nonexistent default gateway address, it will not be able to communicate with devices in remote networks.
- Similar to IPv4 addressing issues, default gateway problems can be related to misconfiguration (in the case of manual assignment) or DHCP problems (if automatic assignment is in use).
- To verify the default gateway on Windows-based computers, use the **ipconfig** command.
- On a router, use the **show ip route** command to list the routing table and verify that the default gateway, known as a default route, has been set. This route is used when the destination address of the packet does not match any other routes in its routing table.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

877

**Troubleshooting Scenarios****Troubleshooting DNS Issues**

- It is common for users to mistakenly relate the operation of an internet link to the availability of the DNS.
- DNS server addresses can be manually or automatically assigned via DHCP.
- Although it is common for companies and organizations to manage their own DNS servers, any reachable DNS server can be used to resolve names.
- Cisco offers OpenDNS which provides secure DNS service by filtering phishing and some malware sites. OpenDNS addresses are 208.67.222.222 and 208.67.220.220. Advanced features such as web content filtering and security are available to families and businesses.
- Use the **ipconfig /all** as shown to verify which DNS server is in use by the Windows computer.
- The **nslookup** command is another useful DNS troubleshooting tool for PCs. With **nslookup** a user can manually place DNS queries and analyze the DNS response.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

878

877

**Troubleshooting Scenarios****Packet Tracer – Troubleshoot Connectivity Issues**

The objective of this Packet Tracer activity is to troubleshoot and resolve connectivity issues, if possible. Otherwise, the issues should be clearly documented and so they can be escalated.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

879

**Troubleshooting Scenarios****Packet Tracer – Troubleshoot Connectivity Issues – Physical Mode  
Lab - Troubleshoot Connectivity Issues**

In this Packet Tracer Physical Mode activity and in the Lab, you will complete the following objectives:

- Identify the Problem
- Implement Network Changes
- Verify Full Functionality
- Document Findings and Configuration Changes



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential

880

879

880

## 17.8 Module Practice and Quiz

881

© 2016 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 881

Troubleshooting Scenarios  
**Packet Tracer – Design and Build a Small Business Network – Physical Mode**  
**Lab – Design and Build a Small Business Network**

In this Packet Tracer Physical Mode activity and in the Lab, you will complete the following objectives:

- Design and build a network
- Explain how a small network of directly connected segments is created, configured, and verified

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 882

882

Troubleshooting Scenarios  
**Packet Tracer – Skills Integration Challenge**

In this Packet Tracer activity, you will use all the skills you have acquired over throughout this course.

Scenario:

The router Central, ISP cluster, and the Web server are completely configured. You must create a new IPv4 addressing scheme that will accommodate 4 subnets using the 192.168.0.0/24 network. The IT department requires 25 hosts. The Sales department needs 50 hosts. The subnet for the rest of the staff requires 100 hosts. A Guest subnet will be added in the future to accommodate 25 hosts. You must also finish the basic security settings and interface configurations on R1. Then, you will configure the SVI interface and basic security settings on switches S1, S2, and S3.

883

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 883

Troubleshooting Scenarios  
**Packet Tracer – Troubleshooting Challenge**

In this Packet Tracer activity, you will troubleshoot and resolve a number of issues in an existing LAN.

© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 884

884

## Module Practice and Quiz

## What Did I Learn In This Module?

- Factors to consider when selecting network devices for a small network are cost, speed and types of ports/interfaces, expandability, and OS features and services.
- When implementing a network, create an IP addressing scheme and use it on end devices, servers and peripherals, and intermediary devices.
- Redundancy can be accomplished by installing duplicate equipment, but it can also be accomplished by supplying duplicate network links for critical areas.
- The routers and switches in a small network should be configured to support real-time traffic, such as voice and video, in an appropriate manner relative to other data traffic.
- There are two forms of software programs or processes that provide access to the network: network applications and application layer services.
- To scale a network, several elements are required: network documentation, device inventory, budget, and traffic analysis.
- The ping command is the most effective way to quickly test Layer 3 connectivity between a source and destination IP address.
- The Cisco IOS offers an "extended" mode of the ping command which lets the user create special types of pings by adjusting parameters related to the command operation.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 885

## Module Practice and Quiz

## What Did I Learn In This Module (Cont.)?

- A trace returns a list of hops as a packet is routed through a network.
- There is also an extended traceroute command. It allows the administrator to adjust parameters related to the command operation.
- Network administrators view the IP addressing information (address, mask, router, and DNS) on a Windows host by issuing the ipconfig command. Other necessary commands are **ipconfig /all**, **ipconfig /release** and **ipconfig /renew**, and **ipconfig /displaydns**.
- Verifying IP settings by using the GUI on a Linux machine will differ depending on the Linux distribution (distro) and desktop interface. Necessary commands are ifconfig, and ip address.
- In the GUI of a Mac host, open Network Preferences > Advanced to get the IP addressing information. Other IP addressing commands for Mac are ifconfig, and networksetup -listallnetworkservices and networksetup -getinfo <network service>.
- The arp command is executed from the Windows, Linux, or Mac command prompt. The command lists all devices currently in the ARP cache of the host, which includes the IPv4 address, physical address, and the type of addressing (static/dynamic), for each device.
- The arp -a command displays the known IP address and MAC address binding.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 886

885

## Module Practice and Quiz

## What Did I Learn In This Module (Cont.)?

- Common show commands are **show running-config**, **show interfaces**, **show ip address**, **show arp**, **show ip route**, **show protocols**, and **show version**. The **show cdp neighbor** command provides the following information about each CDP neighbor device: identifiers, address list, port identifier, capabilities list, and platform.
- The **show cdp neighbors detail** command will help determine if one of the CDP neighbors has an IP configuration error.
- The **show ip interface brief** command output displays all interfaces on the router, the IP address assigned to each interface, if any, and the operational status of the interface.
- The six basic steps to troubleshooting Step 1. Identify the problem Step 2. Establish a theory of probably causes. Step 3. Test the theory to determine the cause. Step 4. Establish a plan of action and implement the solution. Step 5. Verify the solution and implement preventive measures. Step 6. Document findings, actions, and outcomes.
- A problem should be escalated when it requires a decision of a manager, some specific expertise, or network access level unavailable to the troubleshooting technician.
- OS processes, protocols, mechanisms and events generate messages to communicate their status. The IOS debug command allows the administrator to display these messages in real-time for analysis.
- To display log messages on a terminal (virtual console), use the terminal monitor privileged EXEC command.



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 887

887

## Module 17: Build a Small Network

## New Terms and Commands

- network applications
- application layer services
- extended ping
- extended traceroute
- network Baseline
- ifconfig**
- netsh interface ip delete arpcache**
- scientific method
- debug**
- terminal monitor**



© 2019, 2021 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco Confidential 888

886



889